Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests

June 2004

Cette publication spécialisée n’est disponible qu’en anglais en vertu du Règlement 411/97, qui en exempte l’application de la Loi sur les services en français.
The Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests

The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests that was approved by Cabinet in 1993. The framework sets broad direction for forest policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest management.

Overview of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

The Crown Forest Sustainability Act replaced the Crown Timber Act, and came into effect on April 1, 1995. The Act is enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest planning, information, operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and enforcement, and transitional provisions. The Crown Forest Sustainability Act is designed to allow for the management of all forest-based values, while providing for the sustainability of Crown forests. The Crown Forest Sustainability Act defines sustainability as long-term Crown forest health.

A Manual Approach to Implementation of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

The Crown Forest Sustainability Act requires the provision of four manuals to guide various aspects of forest management planning in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance with Section (68) of the Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1) 29. The four manuals developed by the Ministry of Natural Resources (MNR), in collaboration with non-government organizations, are:

2. The Forest Information Manual (2001);
3. The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (1995, 2000); and

The Forest Management Planning Manual is the pivotal document that provides direction for all aspects of forest management planning for Crown lands in Ontario within the area of the undertaking, as defined on page 35 in the Environmental Assessment Board’s Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02). The Forest Management Planning Manual was originally regulated under the Crown Forest Sustainability Act in 1996.

In accordance with the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the sustainability of the forest will be determined in accordance with the approach described in the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The approach requires the identification of measurable indicators in order to assess the effectiveness of activities in achieving management objectives and to assess the sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For the forest management plan, the determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that the forest management plan provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has had regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the monitoring and evaluation of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes, which provide a means for continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest management activities.

The *Forest Information Manual* provides guidance for information management that supports forest management planning and operations.

The *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* is a compendium of guidance and direction for the conduct of operations authorized by approved forest management plans. This manual provides for the qualification of persons engaged in forest operations, as well as measures for assessing the performance of forest operations.

The *Scaling Manual* provides direction for the measurement of all timber harvested from Crown land in Ontario. It provides the means through which Ontario collects revenue from the disposition of Crown timber.

**Manual Revision**

The four manuals will continue to be works in progress. They will be revised, improved and updated based on experiences in using the manuals, and as new information becomes available. Revisions to the *Forest Management Planning Manual* will be made in accordance with the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* regulation requiring public review and comment.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FOREWORD</strong></td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTRODUCTION</strong></td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS</td>
<td>A-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-in Provisions</td>
<td>A-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN</td>
<td>A-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM</td>
<td>A-77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION</td>
<td>A-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING</td>
<td>A-129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS</td>
<td>B-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>B-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>B-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION</td>
<td>B-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS</td>
<td>B-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY</td>
<td>B-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0 DOCUMENTATION</td>
<td>B-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY</td>
<td>B-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM</td>
<td>B-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES</td>
<td>B-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWAL</td>
<td>C-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-In Provisions</td>
<td>C-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>C-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS</td>
<td>C-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS</td>
<td>C-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0 UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS</td>
<td>C-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM</td>
<td>C-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION</td>
<td>C-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT</td>
<td>C-33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>D-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS</td>
<td>D-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION
The Forest Management Planning Manual prescribes the requirements for Ontario’s forest management planning system including a detailed description of the planning process and the products. The forest management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of planning, implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this planning system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.


The Forest Management Planning Manual focuses on the delivery of the forest management component of higher-order provincial and regional land use and resource management policies and strategies including:

- Beyond 2000;
- MNR Statement of Environmental Values;
- Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
- Forest Resource Assessment Policy;
- Old Growth Policy for Ontario’s Crown Forests;
- Ontario’s Living Legacy Land Use Strategy; and

These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context for the preparation of forest management plans, including the determination of forest sustainability.

The geographic basis for a forest management plan is a management unit. As of April 1, 2004, there are 48 management units in Ontario's Crown forest within the area of the undertaking (Appendix I). Forest management plans are prepared for each management unit within the area of the undertaking, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual. Forest management plans provide the authority to carry out forest management activities including road access, timber harvest, and forest renewal, tending and protection treatments.

On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest licence, the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation and implementation of a forest management plan. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is referenced as the party responsible for preparing and implementing forest management plans. Where the requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those requirements will apply to the MNR or the party responsible for the preparation and implementation of a forest management plan.
INTRODUCTION

For the purpose of this manual, all approvals reference the MNR Regional Director, MNR District Manager and/or MNR Area Supervisor. In the case of the Algonquin Park Forest, the Park Superintendent will be considered to be the MNR District Manager, and the Operations Leader will be considered to be the MNR Area Supervisor, for the requirements of this manual.

Forest management plans are prepared for a ten-year period with two five-year operational terms. The *Forest Management Planning Manual* breaks the planning process into two phases. Phase I refers to the initial 24 to 27 months that results in a forest management plan that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary and branch road corridors, and details of operations for the initial five-year operational term. Phase II refers to the eight to ten month planning process that occurs during the fifth year of the ten-year plan period and results in the details of operations for the second five-year term.

The *Forest Management Planning Manual* is divided into five major parts:

PART A provides direction for the preparation of forest management plans, and describes requirements for:

- Phase I – preparing the ten-year forest management plan (including detailed operations for the first five-year term);
- Phase II – planning of operations for the second five-year term;
- public consultation; and
- Aboriginal involvement.

PART B provides the forest management plan content requirements and describes requirements for:

- title, certification and approval pages;
- section headings and associated documentation;
- supplementary documentation;
- forest management plan summary;
- Phase II documentation; and
- forest management plan tables

PART C provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, and unscheduled and early plan renewals and describes the requirements for:

- administrative, minor and major amendments;
- contingency plans;
- unscheduled and early plan renewals;
- a delay in approval of operations for the second five-year term;
- public consultation; and
- Aboriginal involvement.
INTRODUCTION

**PART D** provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual basis, and describes requirements for:

- forest operations prescriptions;
- annual work schedules;
- prescribed burns;
- aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- insect pest management programs;
- public consultation; and
- Aboriginal involvement.

**PART E** provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and describes:

- requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- additional requirements for the year three annual report;
- additional requirements for the year seven and year ten annual reports;
- submission and review requirements; and
- management unit annual report tables.

In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

I. Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking
II. Existing Roads Table
III. Analysis Package Contents
IV. Social and Economic Description Outline
V. List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps
VI. Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in Strategic Analysis
VII. Road Planning Supplementary Documentation Form
VIII. Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form

The manual also contains a glossary of terms.

The *Forest Management Planning Manual* is intended to be used by those involved in forest management planning including registered professional foresters, other related professionals, stakeholders and the public.

By January 31 of each year, MNR will produce a list of all management units. This list identifies forest management plans currently in preparation, all forest management plans expected to be initiated in that year, and all management units where operational planning for the second five-year term is scheduled in that year. This list will be available to the public upon request.
INTRODUCTION

Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual

The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years before all requirements of this *Forest Management Planning Manual* can be fully implemented for all management units across the province. The requirements of this *Forest Management Planning Manual* will apply upon the effective date of this manual, unless otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning of each Part of this manual.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN 8
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning 10
  1.1.1 Introduction ......................................................... 10
  1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities .... 10
  1.1.2 Planning Team ..................................................... 10
  1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference ......................................... 12
  1.1.3 Local Citizens Committee ................................. 15
  1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements ..................... 15
  1.1.5 Progress Checkpoints ......................................... 16
  1.1.6 Analysis Package ................................................ 17
  1.1.7 Assembly and Update of Background Information 17
    1.1.7.1 Sources of Direction .................................. 17
    1.1.7.2 Provincial Audits and Reports ....................... 18
    1.1.7.3 Forest Management Guides ............................ 19
    1.1.7.4 Management Unit Annual Reports ................ 19
    1.1.7.5 Planning Inventory ...................................... 19
    1.1.7.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information .... 20
    1.1.7.7 Forest Management Guides ............................ 19
    1.1.7.8 Values Maps ................................................ 22
    1.1.7.9 Roads Inventory ........................................... 23
    1.1.7.10 Social and Economic Description ............... 23
    1.1.7.11 Historic Forest Condition ......................... 24
  1.1.8 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each Aboriginal Community 24
  1.1.9 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate .... 25

1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 25
  1.2.1 Introduction ..................................................... 25
  1.2.2 Current Forest Condition ................................. 28
    1.2.2.1 Forest Units ............................................... 28
    1.2.2.2 Habitat Classifications ................................. 28
    1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern ............................ 29
    1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications ....................... 29
  1.2.3 Management Considerations .............................. 29
  1.2.4 Strategic Analysis ............................................ 30
    1.2.4.1 Introduction ............................................... 30
    1.2.4.2 Decision Support Systems ........................... 30
    1.2.4.3 Guiding Principles and Technical Requirements 31
    1.2.4.4 Base Model ............................................... 31
    1.2.4.5 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield ............ 32
    1.2.4.6 Forest Dynamics – Forest Succession ............ 33
    1.2.4.7 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance .......... 33
  1.2.5 Natural Benchmark ........................................... 33
  1.2.6 Strategic Silvicultural Options ......................... 33

June 2004
Forest Management Planning Manual
A-1
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

1.3.12 Summary Map ................................................................. 66
1.3.13 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ........................................ 67
1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan .................................................................................................................. 67
1.4.1 Introduction ........................................................................ 67
1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan ................................................................. 67
1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan ......................................................................... 69
1.4.4 MNR Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan ................................................................ 69
1.4.4.1 MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations ................................................................ 70
1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary ......................................................... 71
1.4.6 Distribution of the Draft Forest Management Plan ......................................................................... 71
1.4.7 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan ................................................................. 71
1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan ................................................................. 72
1.5.1 Introduction ........................................................................ 72
1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations ............................................................................................... 72
1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary .................................................................................................................. 73
1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan ............................................. 73
1.5.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ........................................................................ 75
1.5.6 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ................................................................. 76
1.5.7 Phase I: Stage Five – Information Centre: Review of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ................................................................. 76
1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan ............................................................................... 76
2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM .......................................................................................... 77
2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations ............................................................................... 77
2.1.1 Introduction ........................................................................ 77
2.1.2 Updates ............................................................................................... 77
2.1.2.1 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee ........................................................................... 77
2.1.2.2 Resource Stewardship Agreements ............................................................................................. 78
2.1.2.3 Background Information ........................................................................................................... 79
2.1.2.4 Roads Inventory .......................................................................................................................... 79
2.1.2.5 Analysis of Renewal and Tending Requirements ...................................................................... 80
2.1.2.6 Aboriginal Consultation Approach ............................................................................................ 80
2.1.3 Selection of Areas of Operations ............................................................................................... 80
2.1.4 Prescriptions for Operations ........................................................................................................... 81
2.1.4.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ...................................................................... 81
2.1.4.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .............................................................. 81
2.1.5 Roads ............................................................................................... 82
2.1.5.1 Primary and Branch Road Corridors ............................................................................................. 82
2.1.5.2 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads ........................................................................ 82
2.1.5.3 Operational Roads .......................................................................................................................... 82
2.1.5.4 Existing Roads ............................................................................................................................. 83
2.1.6 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values ........................................................................ 83
2.1.7 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ................................................................. 83
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

1 2.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Planned Operations ........................................................................................................ 83
2 2.2.1 Introduction .................................................................................................... 83
3 2.2.2 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations ................................................. 84
4 2.2.3 Submission of the Draft Planned Operations ............................................... 85
5 2.2.4 MNR Review of the Draft Planned Operations ............................................. 85
6 2.2.4.1 MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations ........................................ 86
7 2.2.5 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations Summary ................................ 86
8 2.2.6 Distribution of the Draft Planned Operations .............................................. 87
9 2.2.7 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations ....................... 87
10 2.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Revision and Approval of the Planned Operations ... 87
11 2.3.1 Introduction .................................................................................................. 87
12 2.3.2 Final List of Required Alterations ................................................................. 88
13 2.3.3 Preparation of the Planned Operations and Planned Operations Summary .... 89
14 2.3.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Planned Operations ...................... 90
15 2.3.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Planned Operations ............................... 91
16 2.3.6 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations ... 91
17 2.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations ............................................. 91
18
19 3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .................................................................................. 92
20 3.1 Introduction ....................................................................................................... 92
21 3.2 Local Citizens Committee ............................................................................... 92
22 3.2.1 Introduction .................................................................................................. 92
23 3.2.2 Purpose ......................................................................................................... 93
24 3.2.3 Membership and Organization .................................................................... 94
25 3.2.4 Terms of Reference ...................................................................................... 95
26 3.2.5 Administration ............................................................................................ 96
27 3.2.6 Reports and Records .................................................................................. 96
28 3.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation ................................................... 98
29 3.3 Public Consultation Requirements .................................................................. 98
30 3.3.1 Introduction .................................................................................................. 98
31 3.3.2 General Requirements ................................................................................ 98
32 3.3.2.1 Public Notices .......................................................................................... 99
33 3.3.2.1.1 Additional Information Centres .............................................................. 100
34 3.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee Communication ................ 101
35 3.3.2.3 Responses to Comments .......................................................................... 101
36 3.3.2.4 *French Language Services Act* ................................................................ 101
37 3.3.2.5 *Environmental Bill of Rights* ................................................................. 102
38 3.3.3 Phase I Consultation ................................................................................... 102
39 3.3.3.1 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate ............................................ 102
40 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
41 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
42 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
43 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
44 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
45 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
46 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 102
47
48
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

3.3.3.3 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations...

3.3.3.4 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

3.3.3.5 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

3.3.4 Phase II Consultation

3.3.4.1 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

3.3.4.2 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

3.3.4.3 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

3.3.4.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations

3.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

3.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

3.4.2 Process for Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

4.1 Introduction

4.2 Planning Team

4.3 Local Citizens Committee

4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

4.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Consultation Approach

4.5.1 Forest Management Plans
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

1 4.5.1.2 Phase II Consultation ................................................................. 134
2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .......... 134
3 Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations ................................... 134
4 Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations ........... 135
5 4.6 Documentation ................................................................................. 135
6 4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report .................................... 135
7 4.6.2 Social and Economic Description .................................................. 136
8 4.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values ....................... 136
9 4.6.4 Summary of Aboriginal Involvement ............................................... 137

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Production of a Forest Management Plan .... 9
Figure A-2: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage One ............... 11
Figure A-3: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Two ............... 26
Figure A-4: Long-Term Management Direction .......................................... 27
Figure A-5: Indicators of Objective Achievement ........................................ 39
Figure A-6: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Three .......... 51
Figure A-7: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Four ............ 68
Figure A-8: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Five .......... 74
Figure A-9: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage One .... 78
Figure A-10: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Two ... 84
Figure A-11: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Three ... 88
Figure A-12: Overview of Phase I Public Consultation .................................. 103
Figure A-13: Overview of Phase II Public Consultation .................................. 114
Figure A-14: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase I Planning .......... 122
Figure A-15: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase II Planning .......... 123
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a forest management plan. Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the ten-year forest management plan (Phase I). Section 2.0 describes the requirements for preparing the planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II). Section 3.0 describes public consultation requirements for both Phase I and Phase II planning. Section 4.0 describes the requirements for Aboriginal involvement in forest management planning.

The forest management plan (FMP) tables referenced in Part A are included in Part B, Section 9.0.

Phase-in Provisions

All forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2007 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests, dated September 1996, except for the following:

For forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2007, for any request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 will apply.

For forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2007, any issue resolution which has commenced prior to the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, will be conducted in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests, dated September 1996.

Within six months from the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, MNR District Managers will ensure the local citizens committee membership and organization requirements described in Part A, Section 1.1.3 and 3.2.3, are met.

Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.4.6 and 1.5.5 will apply to all draft and MNR-approved forest management plans prepared in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests, dated September 1996.
1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

Forest management plans must be prepared in accordance with the planning requirements described in this manual for each management unit in Ontario, within the area of the undertaking. The management unit boundaries as of April 1, 2004 for the area of the undertaking are depicted on the map in Appendix I of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

A forest management plan will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by MNR or by an organization authorized by MNR. Forest management plans will be prepared for a ten-year period and will normally be renewed every ten years. The preparation of the plan occurs in two phases. The strategic, long-term planning and the planning of the first five years of operations occur during Phase I. Phase I planning has five stages of consultation. Phase II planning has three stages of consultation and involves the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.0).

The preparation, review and approval of the ten-year forest management plan takes about 21 months. The timetable for the production of a forest management plan, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1.

Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be gathered and/or prepared to be available for Stage One of consultation.

Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the long-term management direction, including the identification of preferred and optional areas for harvest. This section also describes the required documentation and products that must be available for Stage Two of consultation.

Section 1.3 describes the process to be followed for identifying the areas of operations for harvest, renewal and tending for the ten-year period and the process for operational planning for the first five-year term. This section also describes the required documentation and products that must be available for Stage Three of consultation.

Section 1.4 describes the requirements for preparing the draft plan, submitting the draft plan to MNR, and the requirements for MNR’s review. This section also describes the required documentation and products that must be available for Stage Four of consultation.

Section 1.5 describes the process for plan revision and approval and the products to be available for Stage Five of consultation.
Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Production of a Forest Management Plan

**PHASE I: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

- **Stage One**: Invitation to Participate
- **Stage Two**: Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction
- **Stage Three**: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
- **Stage Four**: Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan
- **Stage Five**: Inspection of MNR Approved Plan

**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

**PHASE II: Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term**

- **In Year 5**
  - **Stage One**: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
  - **Stage Two**: Review of Draft Planned Operations
  - **Stage Three**: Inspection of MNR Approved Planned Operations

**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning

1.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information, in preparation for Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.1). Figure A-2 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

The information and products described in this section will be available when the notice inviting the public to participate in the development of the forest management plan is issued at Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.1).

1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities

A description of the management unit responsibilities for the management unit will be prepared. It will include responsibilities of MNR, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies, if applicable.

1.1.2 Planning Team

A forest management plan will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team and a local citizens committee. In addition, advisors play a role in providing advice and support on particular subject areas during plan production.

The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licensed under the Professional Foresters Act, 2000. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest licensee, the organization will select the plan author. If the plan is prepared by MNR, the MNR District Manager will select the plan author.

The MNR District Manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a working body, with all members participating in plan production. The team will normally include individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and wildlife, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural heritage, fire management, inventory and analysis, enforcement and Aboriginal involvement. The level of participation of team members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise. Ideally, planning team members will be familiar with the management unit. The planning team must include a registered professional forester employed by MNR.

The local citizens committee may nominate one of its members to serve on the planning team (Part A, Section 3.2.2). In addition, when applicable and where possible, the MNR District Manager will invite a person who collectively represents overlapping licensees and beneficiaries of MNR wood supply commitments who do not have ownership in the
Figure A-2: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage One

PHASE I: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan

- **Stage One**: Invitation to Participate
- **Stage Two**: Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction
- **Stage Three**: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
- **Stage Four**: Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan
- **Stage Five**: Inspection of MNR Approved Plan

Preparation for Stage One - Organizing for Planning:
- Contact Aboriginal communities
- Contact resource-based tourism operators
- Select plan author and appoint planning team, prepare terms of reference
- Review membership and fill vacancies on Local Citizens Committee, prepare terms of reference
- Assemble and update background information
- Prepare for Stage One consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.3.1)

Note: This schedule represents the “ideal” - exact dates may vary.
company holding the sustainable forest licence on the management unit to participate on the planning team.

The MNR District Manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan, to participate on the planning team (Part A, Section 4.2).

The MNR District Manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the planning team requires organizational and facilitation skills and ensures the planning team members adhere to responsibilities and deadlines, as outlined in the terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1). The chair of the planning team may be the plan author, an official of the sustainable forest licensee, or an MNR district employee.

The MNR District Manager may invite representatives from Ontario Parks, MNR Science and Information Branch, and MNR’s regional and main office to act as advisors to the planning team and/or plan reviewers. The MNR District Manager will also consult with other government ministries or agencies to determine whether those organizations have specific interests that will be addressed in the forest management plan. If they do, representatives of those organizations will be invited to act as advisors to the planning team. For example, where applicable, local Municipal Economic Development Officers, the Ministry of Northern Development and Mines, the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation and the Ministry of Culture will be contacted, and invited to provide advisors to the planning team. This advisory role is available to any provincial government ministry or agency, including those agencies responsible for Aboriginal affairs. Representatives from the Ministry of the Environment may attend planning team meetings at their discretion.

The MNR District Manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee, may choose to have a steering committee for the production of the forest management plan. The steering committee will normally include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee and the MNR District Manager. The steering committee will have the authority to resolve resourcing issues and disagreements among planning team members. If a steering committee is not established, the MNR District Manager will resolve resourcing issues and disagreements among planning team members.

1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of reference for the production of the forest management plan, including the roles and responsibilities of planning team members and a schedule for plan production. If there are interests that are not represented on the planning team, the MNR District Manager may assign responsibilities to specific planning team members to represent those interests.
The terms of reference will contain:

(a) for those management units that choose to have a steering committee, the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and the names and affiliations of the steering committee members;

(b) the names of the plan author, planning team members, the chair, MNR advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries, agencies and municipalities) and MNR plan reviewers;

(c) a list of the analysis tools that will be used, and a discussion of the manner in which they will be used. Analysis tools to be used for any of the following tasks must be authorized by the Director of MNR’s Forest Management Branch prior to the approval of the terms of reference:

(i) projection of forest conditions through time;

(ii) analysis of management strategies;

(iii) determination of the available harvest area;

(iv) determination of the required types and levels of silvicultural activities; and

(v) assessment of sustainability;

(d) identification of issues that may affect the schedule for plan production;

(e) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members, including the involvement of the MNR District Manager and/or the steering committee;

(f) the roles, responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member, with deadlines for production. Planning team members will acknowledge their roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the terms of reference. All of the tasks for the production of the plan will be itemized, including responsibilities for:

(i) who will be the liaison with Aboriginal communities;

(ii) who will be the liaison with licensed resource-based tourist operators with resource stewardship agreements;

(iii) who will be the contact for the local citizens committee;

(iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;

(v) who will be responsible for updating MNR’s mailing list, the preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;

(vi) who will be required to attend information centres;

(vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g., the social and economic description, maps) in the production of the forest management plan;

(viii) who will participate in the development of the long-term management direction, and which tasks they will be responsible for;

(ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the forest management plan; and

(x) who will be responsible for preparing the *Statement of Environmental Values* briefing note (Part B, Section 1.0);

(g) a schedule for plan production, including MNR review and approval;
(h) a schedule for progress checkpoints, and identification of who will be responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required information (Part A, Section 1.1.5);

(i) a schedule for formal public consultation;

(j) for each stage of the formal public consultation process, identification of the responsibility for issuing the public notice, and, where applicable, the supplemental notice (e.g., MNR and/or sustainable forest licensee and/or local citizens committee);

(k) identification of the number of copies of the draft and approved forest management plan and plan summary that are required, the format of those copies (e.g., paper, digital), and who is responsible for distribution of the copies;

(l) the roles and responsibilities of MNR plan reviewers, including designation of a coordinator for the lists of required alterations;

(m) a communications plan, which outlines the costs, timing and responsibilities for communications efforts, including French and Aboriginal translation, mailings, information centres and printing; and

(n) the MNR funding requirements to support plan production.

The terms of reference will contain sufficient detail to enable the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director to understand MNR's staffing and funding requirements.

The terms of reference must be approved by the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director in order to proceed with planning. The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process. A senior official from the plan author's organization must sign the draft terms of reference to acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on the planning team.

The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the District Manager for review at least 60 days before issuing the first public notice. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 15 days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures of the planning team members and the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and submit the final version to the MNR District Manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign and approve the terms of reference, and forward it to the MNR Regional Director for approval. The MNR Regional Director will send a letter of approval to the MNR District Manager and the senior official of the organization responsible for preparation of the forest management plan, after the approval has been given.

Throughout the planning process, the terms of reference will be updated to reflect changes to the production schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities. Changes to the production schedule must be forwarded to the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director for their information.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

The terms of reference will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

1.1.3 Local Citizens Committee

A local citizens committee must be in place to assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team during the production of the forest management plan. Normally, the committee will already be in place. This committee may be established for the particular management unit for which the forest management plan is being prepared, or it may be an MNR district committee established to assist in the production of forest management plans for all management units in the district. For some management units, the MNR District Manager may establish additional local citizens committees or sub-committees. The role of the local citizens committee in the production and implementation of the forest management plan is described in detail in Part A, Section 3.2.

Prior to commencing the production of a new forest management plan, the MNR District Manager will review the membership of the local citizens committee and fill any vacancies. The review of the membership will ensure that a range and balance of interests is represented on the committee. New members will be appointed by the MNR District Manager, normally drawing from nominations provided by local interest groups.

When the membership of the local citizens committee has been confirmed, the committee may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2). The local citizens committee, with assistance from MNR and the plan author, will prepare terms of reference for the committee, as described in Part A, Section 3.2.4.

Prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process, MNR will provide a summary of the background information for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7) to the local citizens committee. The MNR District Manager will ensure that training material regarding roles and responsibilities and general forest management planning matters is available to the local citizens committee.

1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements

The Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding is an agreement between the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development of resource stewardship agreements and related matters.

To initiate the development of an resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan. An up-to-date list of licensed resource-based tourism operators with facilities on the management unit, and licensed resource-based
tourism operators without facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation.

MNR will ensure that the parties are aware of the opportunities for the public and Aboriginal communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement related to forest management activities.

MNR’s forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism values provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions related to forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The prescriptions developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by the public and Aboriginal communities during the production of the forest management plan.

### 1.1.5 Progress Checkpoints

Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development of the long-term management direction of a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2). The appropriate planning team members and advisors, as identified in the planning team terms of reference, must confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for each progress checkpoint and document their support, in order to proceed with planning. The MNR District Manager will resolve any disagreements regarding the satisfactory completion of the required information.

The progress checkpoints are:

(a) Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5);
(b) Forest Units and Habitat Classifications (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1 and 1.2.2.2);
(c) Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4);
(d) Scoping Analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5);
(e) Management Strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2); and
(f) Preliminary Endorsement of Long-term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

The satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoints (a) through (e) will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.6). The MNR Regional Director’s preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction will confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoint (f).

The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms of reference.

During the development of the long-term management direction, previous steps and progress checkpoints in the planning process may be required to be revisited if new, changed or corrected information is available.
1.1.6 Analysis Package

The analysis package documents the information, assumptions, and decisions made during the analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2), and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The analysis package will be updated throughout the planning process, and will facilitate transparent and repeatable decision-making. Appendix III outlines the required contents of the analysis package, which will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

1.1.7 Assembly and Update of Background Information

The planning team will assemble and update the background information that will be used in the preparation of the forest management plan. The background information that will be available may vary across the province, depending on the relevancy for the management unit. Publication of information on some natural resource features, land uses and values may be detrimental to their conservation, in which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation includes:

(a) sources of direction;
(b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNR;
(c) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation;
(d) management unit annual reports, and any previous reports of past forest operations;
(e) forest resource inventory;
(f) fisheries and wildlife inventories;
(g) other resource inventories and information, including cultural heritage resource inventory information, mineral resource assessment maps and ecosite information;
(h) updated values maps and a resource-based tourism values map;
(i) roads inventory;
(j) a social and economic description;
(k) information on the historic forest condition; and
(l) the current Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1).

1.1.7.1 Sources of Direction

*The Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, and the decision of the Environmental Assessment Board on MNR’s *Class EA for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario*, as amended
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

and extended by Declaration Order MNR-71 Regarding the Ministry of Natural Resources
Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in
Ontario and its conditions under the Environmental Assessment Act, provide legal direction
for the management of Ontario’s Crown forests.

The MNR District Manager, with the assistance of MNR regional staff, will ensure that
copies of the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making are
available to the planning team and the local citizens committee at the outset of planning.

Those sources of direction include:

(a) MNR’s provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource
management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the
Statement of Environmental Values for the Ministry of Natural Resources,
MNR’s corporate long-term strategic policy (e.g., Beyond 2000), Policy
Framework for Sustainable Forests, Forest Resource Assessment Policy, and
MNR resource management policies (e.g., Ontario Provincial Parks:
Planning and Management Policies, Old Growth Policy for Ontario’s Crown
Forests);

(b) Crown land use direction contained in Ontario’s Living Legacy Land Use
Strategy and Ontario’s Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, or their successors;

(c) the existing approved forest management plan for the management unit, with
particular emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;

(d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., district fisheries
management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation
interest) that are relevant to the management unit;

(e) independent forest audits and the related action plans for the management
unit;

(f) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from provincial and regional
wood supply strategy documents;

(g) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses
dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;

(h) the results of the negotiations between MNR and Aboriginal communities;

(i) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding
resource use on the management unit).

1.1.7.2 Provincial Audits and Reports

Copies of any audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management
generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management, State of the
Forest Report) will be assembled by the planning team.
1.1.7.3 Forest Management Guides

MNR's current, approved forest management guides must be used in the planning and implementation of forest management activities. The relevant guides for the management unit will be assembled by the planning team.

Forest management guides, formerly referred to as implementation manuals, are described in the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual, and include provincial guidelines, construction or operational manuals, and resource or environmental manuals. The use of provincial guides and construction or operational manuals is mandatory in forest management. Resource or environmental manuals are used in the development of forest management strategies and prescriptions for specific values, when those values are at risk or are featured for management on the management unit.

A list of guides that are applicable to the management unit, as determined by the MNR District Manager, will be prepared. The list will contain the titles and the specific editions of the guides.

1.1.7.4 Management Unit Annual Reports

The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available for use in the preparation of the forest management plan. The year seven management unit annual report for the current forest management plan and the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years, will also be available. In particular, the review of renewal and tending activities, conclusions and recommendations in the year seven management unit annual report will provide important information for confirming or changing the long-term management direction.

1.1.7.5 Planning Inventory

The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and forest diversity analyses. The planning inventory contains updated Forest Resource Inventory information as a result of forest management activities and natural disturbances. The planning inventory also contains expected changes, based on planned operations from the current approved forest management plan (i.e., forest operations which have not yet been implemented).

Preparation of the planning inventory will begin at least six months prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process. The detailed technical requirements, responsibility and timing for production and submission of the planning inventory are described in the Forest Information Manual.
The Forest Resource Inventory information should not be older than 25 years. If the inventory information will reach 20 years of age during the period of a forest management plan, a strategy for re-inventory of the productive forest area must be developed. The detailed requirements for re-inventory are described in the Forest Information Manual.

The Crown forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making in the forest management plan. For forest management planning purposes, the Crown forest is categorized as areas managed for timber production and other areas.

The other areas include national and provincial parks and protected areas, and areas that have been designated through legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for timber production. The areas managed for timber production include all remaining Crown forest lands.

The total area of Crown forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement of non-timber objectives in the forest management plan. For the planning team to consider parks and protected areas on the management unit in the achievement of management objectives, forest inventory information for these areas must be available.

A management unit land summary will be documented in FMP-1. A summary of the Crown productive forest, by provincial forest type, will be documented in FMP-2.

CHECKPOINT: PLANNING INVENTORY COMPLETE AND ACCURATE

1.1.7.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information

Fisheries and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values maps, and the development of management objectives for the forest.

Fisheries and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:

(a) known fish species present, and known fish habitats (e.g., spawning areas);
(b) the slope of shoreland areas;
(c) known sites of occurrence of, and/or high value habitat for, fish and wildlife species listed as threatened or endangered;
(d) known sites of occurrence of fish and wildlife species of special concern (formerly known as vulnerable or rare species);
(e) areas of present or future value as habitat for provincially featured wildlife species, which include moose, deer, caribou, marten and pileated woodpecker; and
(f) known sites of occurrence of, and/or areas of present or future value as habitat for, fish and wildlife species of local concern (locally featured species).
Sources for fisheries information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat surveys.
Sources for wildlife information on known sites of occurrence, and areas of present or future value as wildlife habitat, include moose, deer and caribou population and habitat surveys.
MNR’s Natural Heritage Information Centre is a source of information on species of fish and wildlife listed as endangered or threatened, and species of special concern. Areas of present or future value as habitat for selected species of fish and wildlife can be derived from the Forest Resource Inventory data, and through the use of analytical tools for forest modeling.

1.1.7.7 Other Resource Inventories and Information

Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values maps, and the development of management objectives for the forest.

The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:

(a) known sites of occurrence of, and/or high value habitat for, species of flora listed as threatened or endangered;
(b) known sites of occurrence of flora identified as species of special concern (formerly known as vulnerable or rare species);
(c) known sites of occurrence of, and/or areas of present or future value as habitat for, flora of local concern (locally significant flora);
(d) information on each park and protected area, including the name, designation (e.g., provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g. wilderness, recreation) and area (in hectares);
(e) cultural heritage resource inventory information, including:
   (i) known cultural heritage sites and features;
   (ii) Aboriginal cultural heritage resource information; and
   (iii) areas of high archaeological potential;
(f) mineral resource assessment maps; and
(g) ecosite information, based on the forest ecosystem classification system for the province.

MNR’s Natural Heritage Information Centre is a source of information on species of flora listed as endangered or threatened, and species of special concern. Areas of present or future value as habitat for selected species of flora can be derived from the Forest Resource Inventory data, and through the use of analytical tools for forest modeling. Areas of high archaeological potential can be derived through the use of analytical tools for archaeological predictive modeling. Mineral resource assessment information is available from the Ministry of Northern Development and Mines.
1.1.7.8 Values Maps

For each forest management plan, MNR will produce a values map, or series of maps, for the management unit, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Information Manual*. The values maps provide a summary of the geographical location(s) of known natural resource features, land uses and values for the management unit, including parks and protected areas on the management unit, which will be considered in forest management planning, and about which further inventory information is available. The values maps are intended to be used primarily as background information for planning, and will also be used for display purposes and to solicit additional information about natural resource features, land uses and values. The types of information normally portrayed on the values maps are listed in Appendix V and the *Forest Information Manual*.

The values maps will be continually updated as information is assembled during the production and implementation of the forest management plan. MNR will update and provide the most current, relevant information available on natural resource features, land uses and values, including cultural resource sites and features, for use in forest management planning. Information on natural resource features, land uses and values will be generally available to the public. When publication of the location of particular natural resource features, land uses and values may be detrimental to their conservation, they will not be portrayed on the values maps.

The values maps will be accompanied by text that includes:

(a) a list of information normally portrayed on the values maps;
(b) a list of references to the sources of information on the values maps or otherwise available in the database;
(c) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and
(d) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

The scales of the values maps, and the symbols used for commonly mapped items, are described in the *Forest Information Manual*.

With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain old growth red and white pine forest communities, as defined in the *Old Growth Definitions Report*, will be identified on the values maps for the management unit.

A separate values map for resource-based tourism values will be produced by MNR to support the development of resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4).

The values maps will be maintained at the appropriate MNR area or district office. The most up-to-date versions of the values maps will be available for public distribution, upon request, at the time the first public notice of the formal public consultation process is issued.
1.1.7.9 Roads Inventory

The planning team will assemble information on existing roads on the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. The information will include existing information on the location, responsibility assignment and use management strategy for each road or road network.

Existing roads and approved primary road corridors will be portrayed on the values maps (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8). Primary roads, and roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, will be differentiated. The maps will also identify roads with access restrictions.

1.1.7.10 Social and Economic Description

A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit, using available information, in accordance with the requirements of Appendix IV. The social and economic description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:

(a) communities that receive substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest products from the management unit, and communities that have substantial employment related to the forest industry;
(b) forest resource-processing facilities; and
(c) the primary uses and users of the forest.

The description will be considered in the development of the long-term management direction, and the planning of forest operations.

As part of the social and economic description, a demographic profile will be prepared for each community that receives substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest products from the management unit, and communities that have substantial employment related to the forest industry.

A demographic profile will also be prepared for each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities, if appropriate demographic data is available. The MNR planning team representative, who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will contact each Aboriginal community to invite the community to provide, verify and update information for the demographic profile.

Planning team advisors, in particular the Municipal Economic Development Officers and Northern Development Officers from the Ministry of Northern Development and Mines, may provide, verify or update information for the social and economic description. Forest users may also provide some of the information.
1.1.7.11 Historic Forest Condition

A summary of the historic forest condition for the management unit will be prepared, based on historical management unit information. The summary will describe the forest that existed prior to the industrial use of the forest, based on available information, and subsequent human activities, developments and natural processes that have resulted in the current forest condition.

The summary of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the long-term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2). The historic forest condition will provide insight into the natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest management, and the current forest composition. Historical management unit information will also be useful in understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of forest resources from the management unit.

Sources of historical management unit information include early land survey records, fire history records, old Forest Resource Inventories, old timber cruise surveys and knowledge from local residents. During the production of the forest management plan, the public may contribute additional historical management unit information.

The summary of the historic forest condition for the management unit will address:

(a) historical use of forest resources;
(b) historical development of access;
(c) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and
(d) changes to the forest, including:
   (i) forest type, structure and composition;
   (ii) forest landscape pattern;
   (iii) forest productivity;
   (iv) populations of flora and fauna;
   (v) wildlife habitat; and
   (vi) forest biodiversity.

The summary will also include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and the associated management implications.

1.1.8 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each Aboriginal Community

At least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of a forest management plan, to discuss the development of a consultation approach for forest management planning with the community. A follow-up letter will be
sent to each Aboriginal community, and copies will be provided to the Aboriginal
organization(s) and/or Tribal Council(s) associated with each community.

Within 30 days of the MNR District Manager’s contact, the MNR planning team
representative who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will follow-up with each
Aboriginal community to discuss the community’s interest in developing an approach.

Part A, Section 4.4 describes the requirements for the development of the consultation
approach.

1.1.9 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will
commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section
3.3.3.1, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section
4.4.

1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

1.2.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the development of the long-term management
direction for the management unit, in preparation for Stage Two of public consultation (Part
A, Section 3.3.3.2). Figure A-3 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of
the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

In addition to the most current versions of the information and products which were available
at Stage One of public consultation, the information and products described in this section
will be available during the review of the proposed long-term management direction (Part A,
Section 3.3.3.2).

The long-term management direction for the management unit provides direction for the
levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities required to achieve the desired forest
and benefits. In the development of the long-term management direction, management
objectives are identified, and analytical methodologies, models and tools regarding forest
regulation, social and economic assessment, wildlife habitat supply and landscape
management, are used. A management strategy will be developed that balances the
achievement of management objectives over time. The level of forest harvest is established
for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, using forest regulation methodologies,
models and tools that determine the available harvest area for every forest unit on the
management unit.

The development of the long-term management direction for the forest is an iterative process.
The desired benefit levels and forest management approaches are modified in response to
Figure A-3: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Two

**PHASE I: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

1. **Stage One**
   - Invitation to Participate

2. **Stage Two**
   - Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

3. **Stage Three**
   - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

4. **Stage Four**
   - Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

5. **Stage Five**
   - Inspection of MNR Approved Plan

**Preparing for Stage Two - Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**
- describe current forest condition
- identify management considerations
- develop base model for strategic analysis
- conduct scoping analysis
- determine desired forest and benefits
- develop management objectives, indicators and targets
- develop management strategy
- identify areas available for harvest
- make a preliminary determination of sustainability
- identify alternative primary road corridors
- prepare for Stage Two consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.3.2)

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY.
1. Figure A-4: Long-Term Management Direction
preliminary and subsequent analyses undertaken during the development of the long-term management direction. The long-term management direction will be consistent with legislation, policy and direction in forest management guides, will balance social, economic and environmental considerations, and will provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

1.2.2 Current Forest Condition

A description of the forest, based on the planning inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5) and landscape level information is required to provide baseline information for the development of a management strategy to achieve the desired forest condition. This section describes the ways the current forest is classified and described in terms of forest units, habitat classifications, forest landscape pattern and other forest classifications.

1.2.2.1 Forest Units

Forest units are defined for each management unit and may be based on regional forest units. Unlike the provincial forest types that have standard definitions, forest unit definitions are flexible at the management unit level to address local issues and forest conditions. The forest units will, however, be compatible with provincial forest types.

Forest unit classification applies to the entire Crown forest on the management unit, not just the portion of the production forest land area available for timber production. This enables the entire Crown forest to contribute to specific, non-timber management objectives (e.g., biodiversity).

The managed category of the Crown forest for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5) is further categorized as available or unavailable for timber production. Managed areas categorized as unavailable for timber production include areas of past or anticipated reserve prescriptions for areas of concern, and areas classified as protection forest.

The managed Crown productive forest by forest unit is summarized in FMP-4.

1.2.2.2 Habitat Classifications

Classifications associated with broad habitat types are generally defined regionally, although they can be modified at the management unit level to address local forest conditions. Forest stands will be classified into broad habitat types based on their characteristics as described in the planning inventory.

The selected wildlife species for which habitat will be addressed in the forest management plan, will be identified and will include provincial and locally featured species. A description of the current status of the habitat of the identified species will be available for determining
the desired forest and benefits. Where applicable, the planning team will also provide maps which show the spatial arrangement of habitats of special interest, such as deer and moose range within a management unit, deer yards, marten core areas, and caribou winter habitat. Any conclusions about the distribution and abundance of habitat types that would influence management direction, will also be available.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR FOREST UNITS AND HABITAT CLASSIFICATIONS

1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern

Forest landscape patterns are the result of natural disturbances and the harvest and retention of forest stands. The selection of forest stands for harvest will be planned in consideration of the current forest landscape patterns and the desired landscape patterns, in accordance with MNR’s approved forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

The current forest landscape patterns will be described and mapped. The maps and supporting documentation of the current landscape patterns will be available to support discussions of the desired forest and benefits. The classifications and methodology used to describe and map the forest landscape patterns will also be available.

1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

There may be a need for other forest classifications based on forest cover as well as classifications required for the implementation of a forest management guide (e.g., forest ecosystem classification, caribou mosaic). The rationale for use of other forest classifications and any conclusions about management, will be available to support discussions of desired forest and benefits (Part A, Section 1.2.5).

1.2.3 Management Considerations

There are considerations about the management of the forest, not easily addressed with normal practices and application of forest management guides, which can affect the long-term management direction. Examples of management considerations include:

(a) major changes in landbase
(b) recent, large natural disturbances;
(c) harvest plans in previously unaccessed tourism areas;
(d) Aboriginal interests;
(e) shifts in markets or utilization;
(f) other planning initiatives;
Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current forest management plan, or are anticipated to affect the development of the forest management plan. Annual reports provide updates on plan implementation and highlight problems, issues and opportunities from the previous plan(s) for confirming or changing current management direction.

Other sources of information about management considerations include independent forest audits and the associated approved action plans for the management unit, the values maps, the Aboriginal Background Information Report, and submissions from the local citizens committee and the general public.

The early identification of management considerations will help to avoid delays in plan production. Management considerations will influence the development of a management strategy for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

1.2.4 Strategic Analysis

1.2.4.1 Introduction

Strategic, forest level analysis is conducted to support the development of the management strategy for the forest. Decision support systems will be used to conduct forest level analysis of management options and to support the decision-making required during forest management planning. Guiding principles and technical requirements for management unit level analysis are identified in the Forest Resource Assessment Policy. In conducting forest level analysis to support planning, a base model will be the common starting point for scoping analysis and the development of a management strategy.

1.2.4.2 Decision Support Systems

Decision support systems are information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision modules), databases and a decision-maker’s insight in an interactive, analytical modeling process, to reach a specific decision. In forest management planning, the planning team uses decision support systems to facilitate the analysis of management options in the development of the long-term management direction. Analysis tools that have been approved by the MNR Director, Forest Management Branch for use in forest management planning must be identified in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

A single analysis tool may not be capable of incorporating all of the information required to complete the analysis and make a decision. Where multiple tools are required, an explanation
of how the appropriate information has been incorporated and considered in the analysis will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.6).

The analysis tool(s) proposed for use in the development of the plan will be able to produce the required products/analysis, and:

(a) be capable of tracking the entire landbase of a management unit through time, including all forested and non-forested areas;
(b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or unmanaged, for their contribution to forest diversity, timber production and wildlife habitat;
(c) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of 160 years;
(d) incorporate expected rates of natural depletion agents, such as forest fire, windthrow and insects;
(e) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments;
(f) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural systems (if applicable to the management unit); and
(g) be capable of representing alternative management strategies.

Regardless of the analysis tool(s) used in strategic analysis, all requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual must be met.

1.2.4.3 Guiding Principles and Technical Requirements

Forest resource assessment information and technical requirements are identified in the Forest Resource Assessment Policy. These principles and requirements will be followed when conducting analyses to support the development of the long-term management direction. Any situations where analysis principles could not be followed, or were felt to be inappropriate, will be documented in the forest management plan.

For the purposes of forest modeling, MNR will provide a set of best practices for analysis to guide resource managers in setting-up and conducting forest level analysis.

1.2.4.4 Base Model

The base model serves as the common starting point for scoping analysis and the development of a management strategy. The base model will include assumptions related to the land base, forest dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, essential biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team. Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of model outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. Sensitivity analysis is done during the development of the base model and is used to gain insight on key assumptions as to how the forest develops naturally and responds to forest management practices. The results of sensitivity analysis are used to help rationalize the assumptions used in the base model.
In the development of the base model, the analysis package will document:

(a) data used in the development of the base model and the manner in which the data are classified and updated;
(b) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions, disturbance);
(c) development of the natural benchmark;
(d) strategic silvicultural options;
(e) management assumptions (e.g., harvest flow rules, operability);
(f) forest management guide representation;
(g) the assumptions and conclusions made during the analysis, any sensitivity analysis and the rationale for data inputs; and
(h) any other inputs that will be important for the evaluation of modeling results.

Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield

Yield curves or growth projections will be developed for each forest unit to predict the development of the forest through time. Growth and yield information, applicable to the management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections. In addition, the results of the provincially coordinated growth and yield program, when available and where applicable, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections for the management unit.

The yield curves and growth projections developed will:

(a) be consistent with approved benchmark yield curves, growth projections or models;
(b) be developed using relevant data collected to approved data collection standards and accepted modeling principles;
(c) be validated with independent local data;
(d) be developed to represent forest units and silvicultural treatment options;
(e) be consistent with other assumptions (e.g., forest succession); and
(f) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools used in planning.

When data to support the development of yield curves or growth projections is weak or lacking, reasonable caution will be employed when using the yield curves or growth projections.

The growth projections and yield curves, and the source(s) of information used in their development, will be documented in the analysis package.
Forest Dynamics – Forest Succession

Forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time as a result of aging, break-up, rejuvenation, non-stand replacing natural disturbances, and/or the application of silvicultural treatments. Forest succession also represents the natural succession of non-forested land types to forest. Forest succession can be represented in analysis tools as a transition from one forest unit to another, and/or a change in species composition over time.

To help predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each forest unit and silvicultural intensity combination. The succession assumptions, and the source(s) of information used in their development, will be documented in the analysis package.

Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance

Disturbance information includes the expected rates of natural stand-replacing depletion agents, such as forest fire, windthrow and insects. Sources of disturbance information include: local and regional fire history data, related literature, other historic accounts, forest insect and disease survey reports and provincial annual reports. Normally, only disturbances that are of a recurring nature are reflected in the disturbance assumptions. Disturbances that are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur through inventory updates.

The disturbance assumptions, and the source(s) of information used in their development will be documented in the analysis package.

Natural Benchmark

A natural benchmark is an investigation of how the forest is expected to develop in the absence of human intervention (i.e., through growth, natural succession and natural disturbance). The natural benchmark is used to assist in developing and testing the forest dynamics assumptions in the base model and to provide insight for setting of desirable levels and targets for management objectives relating to forest condition (e.g., forest composition, wildlife habitat, old growth).

The inputs and results of the natural benchmark investigation will be documented in the analysis package.

Strategic Silvicultural Options

Strategic silvicultural options represent the broad, silvicultural options appropriate for the forest. Strategic silvicultural options are groups of silvicultural treatments that exhibit the following characteristics:
They apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., forest unit); they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., forest unit, silvicultural intensity); they require similar silvicultural expenditures; and they use the same growth projections and/or yield curves.

Each strategic silvicultural option will identify the forest unit to which it applies and will have associated assumptions about forest development, treatment costs, response to treatments and success rates. The review of renewal and tending activities documented in the year seven management unit annual report (Part E, Section 4.0) provides recommendations, related to the effectiveness of and expenditures on renewal and tending activities, used in the development of assumptions.

Each strategic silvicultural option will also specify the extent to which the option can be applied on the management unit. For example, only ten percent of the young jack pine stands may exhibit conditions suitable for commercial thinning.

Sensitivity analysis of the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed strategic silvicultural options:

(a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silviculture guides;
(b) where the outcome is uncertain;
(c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain; or
(d) where yields fall outside the suite of approved benchmark yield curves or growth projections.

The strategic silvicultural options and the source(s) of information used in their development will be documented in the analysis package.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR BASE MODEL

1.2.4.5 Scoping Analysis

The purpose of scoping analysis is to examine a range of possibilities for management, and provide insight into what the forest is capable of producing and potential management considerations. Scoping analysis involves a series of investigations of specific levels of objective achievement through a series of model runs, given a range of management unit constraints. The scoping analysis will consider the direction in forest management guides. Each investigation will be used to examine management objectives (e.g., restoring the red and white pine component of the management unit). Scoping analysis will investigate management objectives from the current forest management plan.
Scoping analysis will also investigate the assessments required by the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy* and potential levels of objective achievement. The *Forest Resource Assessment Policy* requires the investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to:

(a) realize the full wood production potential;
(b) meet current industrial demand; and
(c) increase wood supply to support industrial expansion and additional non-industrial goods and services, parks and protected areas.

The investigations required by the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy* examine the production potential and the ability of the forest to meet current wood supply demands. Wood supply from these investigations, the current plan, actual historic utilization, Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels (as identified in the *Regional Wood Supply Strategies*), resource assessments (from *Assessment of Ontario's Forest Resources Report*), and maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group, will also be considered in developing wood supply objectives.

All investigations conducted for the scoping analysis will consider implications on wood supply, forest conditions, habitat, and other non-timber resources for the short-term (10 years) medium-term (20 years) and long-term (100 years).

The scoping analysis will be documented in the analysis package and will include:

(a) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and assumptions;
(b) results and conclusions; and
(c) a digital copy of a selected model run that best represents each investigation.

These investigations are part of the iterative process used in the development of the proposed management strategy.

**CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR SCOPING ANALYSIS**

**1.2.5 Determining the Desired Forest and Benefits**

The planning team and the local citizens committee will identify the forest structure and composition, and the goods and services, which are desired from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs (i.e., desired forest and benefits). The desired forest and benefits are developed considering the background information available for the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7), and include the benefits identified locally by the planning team and the local citizens committee with input from the public.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

The MNR District Manager will organize a meeting of the planning team, MNR plan advisors and the local citizens committee. The purpose of the meeting is to:

(a) inform participants of the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7) and the context under which the plan will be developed;
(b) provide a forum for participants to share their respective interests in management of the forest; and
(c) identify desired forest and benefits.

A summary of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be documented. The planning team, with input from the local citizens committee, will examine the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting and refine the desired forest and benefits to ensure they are achievable. Refinement involves investigating, through scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5), the capability of the management unit to produce the desired forest and benefits.

1.2.6 Forest Sustainability

The Crown Forest Sustainability Act (s. 2 (2)) requires sustainability of a Crown forest to be determined in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. Sustainability is defined in the Crown Forest Sustainability Act as “long term Crown forest health [which is] the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario”.

The Crown Forest Sustainability Act presents two guiding principles for the determination of sustainability in Ontario:

(a) Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.
(b) The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements, emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.

The forest management plan must provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. Determinations of the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit will be made during the preparation of the forest management plan and following the implementation of forest operations. The determination of sustainability during the preparation of the forest management plan is described in Part A, Sections 1.2.6.6 and 1.3.11. The determination of sustainability following the implementation of operations is described in Part E, Section 4.6.

In the preparation of a forest management plan, the determination of sustainability involves:

(a) development of management objectives that address (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1):
1.2.6.1 Objectives and Indicators

As required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, management objectives in a forest management plan must be compatible with the sustainability of the Crown forest (s.68(3)(c)); and indicators of objective achievement must be identified (s.68(3)(d)). As required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (s.68 (5)(b)), each forest management plan must contain management objectives relating to:

(a) Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems,

(b) social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition that healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario communities,

(c) objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are dependent on the Crown forest,

(d) silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown forest.

Figure A-5 identifies objective categories from the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, criteria (from *Ontario’s Sustainable Forest Management Evaluation Framework*) and indicators related to the objective categories, and the timing of assessment of each indicator. Indicators are used in the assessments of objective achievement, and the assessments and determinations of sustainability.
The planning team, with the assistance of the local citizens committee, will develop
management objectives related to the objective categories and indicators (Figure A-5), and
may develop additional management objectives and indicators, including the timing of
assessment of each indicator.

The development of management objectives will consider the objectives in the current
approved forest management plan. The results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part
A, Section 1.2.5) and the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7), in particular, the
forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.7.3), will also be used in the development of
management objectives and indicators (e.g., landscape pattern).

For each management objective, a desirable level for each indicator will be established. A
desirable level is a specific number, a range or a trend for an indicator, to be achieved and
maintained over time. Desirable levels are established locally, and will be used in the
determinations of sustainability. The establishment of a desirable level for each indicator will
consider the appropriate background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7), the results of the
desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5), and the results of the scoping
analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

For each management objective, a target will also be established. A target is a specific
number, a range, or a trend, with a timeframe for achievement. The establishment of targets
for each objective will reflect a balancing of objectives and will consider:

(a) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;
(b) the associated indicator and its desirable level;
(c) the current forest condition; and
(d) the short term (10 years), medium term (20 years), and long term (100 years).

The target may be the same as, or different from, the desirable level of the indicator.
Normally, the target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target
will be established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. For some objectives,
the target may be to monitor the level of an indicator and use the results to establish more
definitive targets in future forest management plans.

Rationale for the desirable levels and targets will be documented for the summary of the
long-term management direction. The management objectives, indicators and the timing of
assessment for each indicator will be documented in FMP-6.
## Figure A-5: Indicators of Objective Achievement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criterion</th>
<th>CFSA Objective Category</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Conserving biological diversity in Ontario’s forests | Forest diversity – natural landscape pattern and distribution | Landscape pattern (specific indicators to be developed from direction in forest management guides) | - Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.4, FMP-13)  
- Upon completion of Phase I operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.9, FMP-13)  
- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.1, Section 4.5, AR-15, AR-20) |
| Conserving biological diversity in Ontario’s forests | Forest diversity – forest structure, composition and abundance | Area by forest type and age | - Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-7, FMP-13)  
- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-18, AR-20) |
| | | Amount and distribution of old growth forest | - Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-13)  
- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-19, AR-20) |
| | Forest diversity – habitat for animal life  
Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest | Area of habitat for forest-dependent provincially and locally featured species | - Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-8, FMP-13)  
- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-19, AR-20) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criterion</th>
<th>CFSA Objective Category</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forest diversity – habitat for animal life</td>
<td>Area of habitat for forest-dependent species at risk</td>
<td>- Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-13)</td>
<td>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-19, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest</td>
<td></td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintaining and enhancing Ontario’s framework for sustainable forest management</td>
<td>Kilometres of road per square kilometre of Crown forest</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest</td>
<td></td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-14, AR-16, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providing for a continuous and predictable flow of economic and social benefits from Ontario’s forests</td>
<td>Compliance with prescriptions for the protection of natural resource features, land uses or values dependent on forest cover (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest</td>
<td>Compliance with prescriptions for the protection of resource-based tourism values (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and economic – healthy forest ecosystems</td>
<td></td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and economic – harvest levels</td>
<td>Compliance with prescriptions for the protection of resource-based tourism values (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term projected available harvest area and volume, by species group</td>
<td></td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and economic – harvest levels</td>
<td>Available, forecast and actual harvest area, by forest unit</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-1, AR-20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criterion</th>
<th>CFSA Objective Category</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Available, forecast and actual harvest volume, by species</td>
<td>Social and economic - community well-being</td>
<td>Available, forecast and actual harvest volume, by species</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-4, AR-5, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percent of forecast volume utilized, by mill</td>
<td>Social and economic - healthy forest ecosystems</td>
<td>Percent of forecast volume utilized, by mill</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-5, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest</td>
<td>Protecting and Conserving Ontario’s Forest Soil and Water Resources</td>
<td>Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest diversity – habitat for animal life</td>
<td>Protecting and Conserving Ontario’s Forest Soil and Water Resources</td>
<td>Forest diversity – habitat for animal life</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Protecting and Conserving Ontario’s Forest Soil and Water Resources</td>
<td>Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance with prescriptions developed for the protection of water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Protecting and Conserving Ontario’s Forest Soil and Water Resources</td>
<td>Compliance with prescriptions developed for the protection of water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in compliance)</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managed Crown forest available for timber production</td>
<td>Accepting social responsibilities for sustainable development</td>
<td>Managed Crown forest available for timber production</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-17, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opportunities for involvement provided to, and involvement of, Aboriginal communities in plan development</td>
<td>Accepting social responsibilities for sustainable development</td>
<td>Opportunities for involvement provided to, and involvement of, Aboriginal communities in plan development</td>
<td>Draft Plan (FMP-13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local citizens committee’s self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development</td>
<td>Accepting social responsibilities for sustainable development</td>
<td>Local citizens committee’s self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development</td>
<td>Draft Plan (FMP-13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-compliance in forest operations inspections (% of inspections in non-compliance, by category (minor, moderate and significant, as determined by MNR))</td>
<td>Maintaining and enhancing frameworks for sustainable forest management</td>
<td>Non-compliance in forest operations inspections (% of inspections in non-compliance, by category (minor, moderate and significant, as determined by MNR))</td>
<td>Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-12, AR-13, AR-20)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1.2.6.2 Development of the Management Strategy

A management strategy is represented by the types and levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities required to manage forest cover, to balance the achievement of
management objectives. The MNR-approved strategic forest-level model (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will be used to develop a management strategy that balances the achievement of all management objectives over time. The modeling outputs for the management strategy will include 160-year projections for specific quantifiable objectives.

The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4) will be used as the starting point for the development of the management strategy. The inputs to the base model will be modified to represent the management objectives. Types and levels of activities will be investigated, through iterative testing and analysis, to balance the achievement of management objectives and refine the management strategy. When a reasonable management strategy cannot be developed to achieve the management objectives and targets, it may be necessary to re-examine the targets to balance the achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments to targets will consider the desirable levels for the indicators.

For targets that are not within the desirable levels, the projections in the proposed management strategy will be compared to projections from past forest management plans and historic levels of objective achievement. In addition, for harvest level objectives, the projections in the proposed management strategy will be compared to:

(a) historic wood utilization; and
(b) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the Regional Wood Supply Strategies.

The modeling outputs project how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and composition and the projected types and levels of activities required to achieve the management objectives. Documentation of the modeling outputs will include:

(a) projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-7);
(b) projected habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-8);
(c) projected available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-9);
(d) projected available harvest volume by species group (FMP-10); and
(e) projected operations, revenues and expenditures (FMP-11).

The development of the management strategy will be documented in the analysis package. The documentation will include:

(a) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;
(b) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model results;
(c) a summary of:
   (i) changes to the base model and rationale for those changes; and
   (ii) modeling results;
(d) the rationale for adjustments to targets, if applicable; and
(e) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for the proposed management strategy.
A registered professional forester will undertake an analysis to determine the necessary levels of renewal and tending activities, and associated expenditures required, to achieve the management objectives. The analysis will consider the recommendations from the review of renewal and tending activities, documented in the year seven management unit annual report (Part E, Section 4.3).

The proposed management strategy will be presented to the local citizens committee to demonstrate the strategy balances the achievement of all management objectives.

Available Harvest Area

In the development of the management strategy, projections of the areas available for harvest, by forest unit and age class and/or stage of management will be provided through forest modeling. The level of harvest area, by forest unit, projected for the first ten-year period of the forest management plan, is the available harvest area. Projections of the areas available for harvest for each forest unit will be presented in FMP-9.

The available harvest area serves as the upper limit for the selection of areas for harvest for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.6.4). Information on age class and stage of management for the available harvest area provides further guidance for the selection of areas for harvest. For the clearcut silvicultural system, area by age class and, in some cases, stage of management (e.g., commercial thinning) is provided. For the shelterwood silvicultural system, the area by stage of management (i.e., preparatory cut, seed cut, first removal harvest, last removal harvest) is provided.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR PROPOSED MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

1.2.6.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement

The achievement of individual management objectives will be assessed using the results of forest modeling for the management strategy. Achievement of objectives directly affected by spatial aspects of forest operations are described in Part A, Sections 1.2.6.4 and 1.3.9.

For the proposed management strategy, each objective will be assessed individually, in relation to the indicators and desirable levels that have been established. The management objective information and an assessment of objective achievement will be documented in FMP-13.

For some management objectives, the implementation timeframe (i.e., the timeframe for achievement of the target) may be greater than the ten-year period of the forest management plan.
The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

(a) Is the desirable level achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or some time in the future? When will the desirable level be achieved?

(b) If the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan period:
   (i) What is the difference between the desirable level and the target, and is the difference substantial?
   (ii) If there is a substantial difference, will progress be made towards achievement of the desirable level?
   (iii) Is the difference a result of balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
   (iv) Is the difference due to the current forest condition?
   (v) Are there trends in objective achievement which raise concerns?

1.2.6.4 Preliminary Spatial Assessment

Management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas or the frequency distribution of forest disturbances, will be assessed for objective achievement following the identification of preferred harvest areas.

Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas

Consistent with the management strategy, criteria will be developed to identify the areas that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period of the forest management plan. The criteria will also be consistent with the direction and standards in MNR’s applicable forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

Considerations for the development of the criteria include:

(a) the maturity of forest stands (age classes);
(b) operability of an area (e.g., physical, topographical, and economic constraints);
(c) emulation of natural disturbance patterns;
(d) wildlife habitat requirements;
(e) industrial wood requirements;
(f) opportunities for harvesting fuelwood;
(g) visual aesthetics;
(h) previous commitments to harvest areas;
(i) provision for continuity of operations; and
(j) the need for insect pest management and salvage operations.

All areas that meet the criteria will be eligible for harvest. The preferred areas for harvest for the ten-year period will be identified and mapped up to the level of the available harvest area for each forest unit, and portrayed separately for each five-year term. In the identification of
the preferred areas, the retained areas (i.e., reserves and areas retained from harvest to meet objectives or guide requirements) accounted for in the strategic analysis will be considered. The preferred harvest areas will match, as closely as possible, the projections of forest operations in the management strategy, in terms of age class and/or stage of management.

All eligible areas that are not preferred areas for harvest are considered to be optional harvest areas for the ten-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified on the preferred and optional areas maps, and may be ranked in order of preference.

Spatial Assessment

The landscape pattern of the preferred harvest areas will be examined to assess whether the harvest areas provide for the achievement of spatial management objectives. The examination and assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas, will be documented in FMP-13.

The frequency distribution of forest disturbances at the start and the end of the plan period, and the desired frequency distribution required by MNR’s applicable forest management guide, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be documented in FMP-12. An examination of the frequency distribution of forest disturbances will assess whether the frequency distribution template will be achieved over time. The forest disturbance frequency distribution assessment will be documented and included in the summary of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.8).

Changes to the preferred harvest areas may be required as a result of these assessments.

The preliminary assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning of operations has been completed to reflect changes to the areas of operations (Part A, Section 1.3.9).

1.2.6.5 Social and Economic Assessment

A social and economic assessment will be prepared for the proposed management strategy. The assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the management strategy. The assessment will examine how the quantity of timber supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements for the proposed management strategy, may affect the communities identified in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10).

The assessment will be prepared using a social and economic model, or a qualitative analysis based on the data in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10, Appendix IV). The methodology used will be documented.
1.2.6.6 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives (using the assessment of objective achievement), the preliminary spatial assessments and the social and economic assessment, and examine whether the proposed management strategy provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit. The preliminary determination of sustainability will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) Are the objective achievement levels within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?

(b) Is there a pattern to the objectives that are not within the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the objective achievement levels related to a common forest type, or a particular Crown Forest Sustainability Act objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1))?

(c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?

(d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?

If the preliminary determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not achieved within the plan period, rationale supporting the proposed management strategy will be required. The rationale will examine whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the desirable levels will be achieved.

The preliminary determination of sustainability will be documented and included in the summary of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.8). The documentation of the preliminary determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the long-term management direction provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit;

(b) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved; and

(c) provide a conclusion that the long-term management direction has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

The planning team will present the preliminary determination of sustainability to the local citizens committee.
1.2.7 Primary Road Corridors

Primary roads are roads that provide principal access for the management unit, and are constructed, maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when specific primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

Primary road corridors in the previous forest management plan within which a road has not yet been constructed will be reviewed. If a corridor is confirmed, no further corridor planning will be required, but if changes to the use management strategy for the road are required, the planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 will apply.

If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning requirements in this section will apply. The planning requirements in this section will also apply to any corridors for new primary roads which are required for forest management purposes for a 20-year horizon, including extensions to existing primary roads. The planning requirements involve the consideration and environmental analysis of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide corridors.

In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be consideration of:

(a) the degree to which physical conditions, non-timber values (i.e., natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the management unit), and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
(b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario’s Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements); and
(c) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations.

The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

(a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
   (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
   (ii) potential effects on non-timber values; and
   (iii) providing access to any remote Aboriginal communities which were previously inaccessible by road;
(b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6), which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance
provisions, and where appropriate, abandonment and decommissioning provisions; and
(c) an estimate of relative costs related to road construction and use management, including maintenance, abandonment and decommissioning costs.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII.

If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR policy, the applicable policy and Environmental Assessment Act requirements for parks and protected areas will apply.

The confirmed corridors from the previous forest management plan, and the alternative corridors for each new primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified on the preferred and optional harvest areas maps. The maps and documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will be available at Stage Two.

1.2.8 Summary of the Long-Term Management Direction

A summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest will be produced. The summary will include:

(a) forest management plan tables for:
   (i) objectives and assessment of objective achievement (FMP-6, FMP-13);
   (ii) spatial assessments (FMP-12, FMP-13); and
   (iii) available harvest area and volume (FMP-9, FMP-10);
(b) text to describe:
   (i) the assessment of objective achievement;
   (ii) the spatial assessments; and
   (iii) the preliminary determination of sustainability; and
(c) a summary map that portrays:
   (i) preferred and optional harvest areas, for each five-year term; and
   (ii) alternative primary road corridors.

The summary will be written in a clear and concise manner to facilitate the public review of the long-term management direction. The summary of the long-term management direction will be available for public distribution, upon request. For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, the French language version of the summary of the long-term management direction will be available for public distribution, upon request.
1.2.9 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.2, and the Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

1.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Three of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.3). Figure A-6 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

In addition to the most current versions of the information and products which were available at Stage Two of public consultation, the information and products described in this section will be available at the information centre for the review of proposed operations (Part A, Section 3.3.3.3).

The confirmation and selection of areas of operations is an iterative process. There will be adjustments to the areas of operations until submission of the final plan for MNR approval. Areas of operations will be adjusted to respond to public comments and the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and to incorporate spatial requirements.

1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

Upon completion of the public review of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 3.3.3.2), prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2, appropriate MNR district and regional staff will review the proposed long-term management direction, the analysis package, and any comments received as a result of the public review. A list of required modifications, and the rationale for those modifications, will be prepared, and must be signed and certified by an MNR registered professional forester. The MNR District Manager will provide the list of required modifications, and the accompanying rationale, to the plan author within 15 days of completion of the public review of the proposed long-term management direction.

The plan author will address MNR’s list of required modifications, which may require further analysis and modeling, because assumptions that were used in the development of the proposed long-term management direction may no longer be valid. The MNR Regional Director will provide preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction after the required modifications have been satisfactorily addressed. After the MNR Regional Director’s preliminary endorsement, the planning team will proceed with the planning of operations.
The MNR Regional Director’s preliminary endorsement is intended to enable planning of operations to proceed with some certainty, and to minimize alterations to the long-term management direction in the draft forest management plan. However, circumstances may arise which require further re-examination of the long-term management direction (e.g., major changes in information and assumptions used in modeling).

A summary of the long-term management direction, for which the MNR Regional Director has provided preliminary endorsement, will be prepared. The summary will be an updated version of the summary of the proposed long-term management direction that was previously prepared (Part A, Section 1.2.8).

CHECKPOINT: PRELIMINARY ENDORSEMENT OF LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations

Based on the public comments at Stage Two, harvest and contingency areas will be selected, and renewal and tending areas will be identified. Areas selected for harvest may include areas for salvage harvest.

1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas

Based on public comments on the preferred and optional harvest areas at Stage Two, areas will be selected for harvest for the ten-year period. Areas not selected for harvest from the preferred and optional harvest areas are optional harvest areas. The selected harvest areas and the optional harvest areas will be portrayed on the selected and optional harvest areas map. The selected harvest areas will be portrayed separately for each five-year term.

The selected harvest areas for the ten-year period will normally be equally balanced between the two five-year terms, and will not exceed the available harvest area for each forest unit. The selected harvest areas will match, as closely as possible, the projections of forest operations in the management strategy, in terms of age class and/or stage of management. If the selected harvest area by forest unit is not closely balanced between the two five-year terms, the rationale must be documented, and the appropriate MNR staff, as identified in the planning team terms of reference, must support the approach. The rationale for the selected harvest areas for the ten-year period, and for each five-year term, will be documented.

In the selection of areas for harvest, the direction and standards in MNR’s approved forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be considered. For clearcuts that do not contribute to the frequency distribution template required by the guide, the rationale will be documented. For clearcuts which exceed 260 hectares, each such clearcut will be recorded, with the accompanying silvicultural or biological rationale.
1. **Figure A-6: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Three**

**PHASE 1: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

- **Stage One**
  - Invitation to Participate

- **Stage Two**
  - Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

- **Stage Three**
  - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

- **Stage Four**
  - Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

- **Stage Five**
  - Inspection of MNR Approved Plan

**Preparation for Stage Three - Planning of Operations**

- MNR Regional Director endorsement of the proposed long-term management direction
- Select areas of operations
- Develop silvicultural ground rules
- Develop prescriptions for operations for the 1st 5-year term
- Develop and document road corridors and use management strategies
- Prepare operations maps
- Issue resolution as needed
- Make a final determination of sustainability
- Prepare for Stage Three consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.3.3)

NOTE: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY
The selected harvest areas required to meet projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments are the planned harvest areas. The planned harvest areas for each five-year term will be portrayed separately on the operations maps. The selected harvest areas in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit, will be clearly identified and mapped as surplus areas on the operations maps. If salvage operations are proposed, salvage harvest areas will be portrayed separately on the operations maps.

The selected harvest areas will be summarized as forecast harvest area in FMP-15. The planned harvest area for the first five-year term will also be summarized in FMP-15. For forest units managed using the shelterwood silvicultural system, the forecast harvest area includes each stage of management (i.e., preparation cut, seed cut, removal cut). For forest units managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, the forecast harvest area includes commercial thinnings.

The area and volume of the available harvest area and forecast harvest area will be summarized in FMP-17. The area and volume of the planned harvest area will be summarized in FMP-18.

1.3.3.2 Contingency Area

During the ten-year period of the forest management plan, unforeseen circumstances (e.g., wildfire, blowdown) may cause some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for harvest. In order to accommodate such circumstances, contingency area for harvest operations will be identified, and portrayed separately on the operations maps. Sufficient contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas, to support a minimum of one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations. The contingency area will serve as replacement area for harvest during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and will only be used if required.

The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in FMP-20.

An amendment to the forest management plan will be required to permit forest operations to proceed in the contingency area (Part C, Section 1.0).

1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas

Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and portrayed on the operations maps for each of the two five-year terms. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected for harvest; areas previously harvested during the term of the current or previous forest management plan(s) and not yet renewed; areas of natural disturbances which require renewal; and areas which require tending.
The analysis of renewal and tending requirements (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2), will be used in the planning of renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending operations forecasted for the ten-year period, and the proposed levels for the first five-year term, will be summarized in FMP-21. The levels of renewal and tending operations will be consistent with the projected levels of the proposed management strategy and the results of the renewal and tending analysis.

1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved forest management plan are not completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations allow for harvest to continue in the new plan.

1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations

Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the completion of harvest operations from the current approved forest management plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the last annual work schedule of the current approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be portrayed on the operations maps, and will be updated during the preparation of the forest management plan.

Areas of bridging operations will be included in the first annual work schedule for the forest management plan. Bridging operations will be limited to three months of harvest operations and must be completed by June 30.

1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the current approved forest management plan. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the first pass has occurred by the expiry of the current forest management plan, will be identified to allow for completion of harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest operations will be portrayed on the operations maps, and will be updated during the preparation of the forest management plan.

An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be prepared.
1.3.5 Prescriptions for Operations

For the areas of operations for the first five-year term, including any surplus harvest areas and contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Prescriptions will be developed for areas of concern, and harvest, renewal and tending areas.

1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

An area of concern is a defined geographic area adjacent to an identified natural resource feature, land use or value that may be affected by forest management activities. These natural resource features, land uses and values are portrayed on the values map(s) for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8), and include parks and protected areas and all lakes and streams (i.e., permanent and intermittent) on the operations maps. An operational prescription is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on the natural resource feature, land use or value.

Operational prescriptions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) or regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules), individually or in combination. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern that are unique prescriptions will describe the forest operations that are permitted in the area of concern.

The proposed operational prescriptions will be documented in FMP-14. All areas of concern will be clearly identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the proposed operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on the maps. All areas of concern documented in FMP-14 will be cross-referenced to the operations maps, and if applicable, the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix VIII).

For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the current approved forest management plan will be documented in the preliminary version of FMP-14. The areas of concern will be identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on the maps.

Operational prescriptions will be developed for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern with a common natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s), using the forest management guides identified by MNR as applicable to the management unit. An operational prescription may also be proposed from another planning exercise for inclusion in the forest management plan. In some situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription.
Operational Prescriptions from a Forest Management Guide

If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription to be used for a particular natural resource feature, land use or value, that specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) will be the operational prescription. Documentation of the operational prescription, and the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in FMP-14.

If a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide is desired, the planning team will develop an operational prescription, in accordance with the requirements for Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team. In such situations, the operational prescription will be recorded in FMP-14 as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided in the supplementary documentation, and the monitoring program for the forest management plan will describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

Operational Prescriptions from Other Planning Exercises

An operational prescription that directly relates to forest management activities may have been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning exercise (e.g., development of a resource stewardship agreement).

The proposed operational prescription will be made available for public review. If the public review supports the proposed operational prescription, no further planning will be required. The proposed operational prescription, and its source, will be documented in FMP-14. The rationale for that operational prescription, including the consideration of the comments received from interested and affected persons and organizations at Stage Three, will be documented in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan, in the form prescribed in Appendix VIII.

If the public review at Stage Three does not support the proposed operational prescription, the planning team will develop an operational prescription, in accordance with the requirements for Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team.

Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team

For some natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s), an existing forest management guide may not provide specific direction or recommendations, no forest management guide exists, or a proposed operational prescription may not have been developed in another planning exercise. In addition, as described in the requirements for Operational Prescriptions from a Forest Management Guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide (i.e., an exception) may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription.
In the development of the operational prescription, there will be consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, and participation of interested and affected persons and organizations. For an operational prescription that is developed for an area of concern that involves a cultural heritage, tourism or recreational value, there will be consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis techniques, in the development of the operational prescription.

The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription will include:

(a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest management operations on the natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s) in the area of concern; and

(b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative operational prescription in preventing, minimizing or mitigating those potential effects.

The selection of the proposed operational prescription will be based on a comparison of the environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions.

The proposed operational prescription will be documented in FMP-14. Documentation of the consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, the participation of interested and affected persons and organizations, and the rationale for the proposed operational prescription, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan, in the form prescribed in Appendix VIII.

1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

For harvest, renewal and tending areas, silvicultural ground rules will be developed; the locations for silvicultural treatments of special public interest will be identified; and requirements for proposed clearcuts will apply.

Silvicultural Ground Rules

A silvicultural ground rule identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system, future forest condition, development information, management standards, regeneration standards, and acceptable alternative harvest, renewal and tending treatments for a specific forest unit – ecosite combination. Silvicultural ground rules will be developed for all forest unit – ecosite combinations on the management unit. The silvicultural ground rules will serve as the prescriptions for the areas of operations, and naturally depleted areas, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

The silvicultural ground rules will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guides identified by
MNR as applicable to the management unit. Local knowledge and the experience gained by
the planning team from past management practices will also be considered.

For each silvicultural ground rule, the preferred silvicultural treatment package that is most
commonly used on the management unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative
silvicultural treatments for each of the harvest, renewal and tending activities. If a
silvicultural ground rule includes a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable
silvicultural guide, that treatment will be recorded as an exception. The rationale for that
exception will be provided, and the monitoring program for the forest management plan will
describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part
B, Section 4.7.2).

The silvicultural ground rules will be documented in FMP-5. For the proposed areas of
operations for the first five-year term, the applicable silvicultural ground rules will be
identified on the operations maps. For candidate areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section
1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the applicable silvicultural
ground rules from the current approved forest management plan will be identified on the
operations maps.

The information on the operations maps represents the best estimate of the site conditions
that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the
planning of operations. At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the
actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified in
the forest management plan, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the
silvicultural ground rules can be selected.

Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest

In the planning of operations for the first five-year term, locations where the following
silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur will be portrayed on the
operations maps:

(a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;
(b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;
(c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest
management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a
result of the application of the planning procedure for insect pest management
programs; and
(d) areas available for fuelwood.

This information will represent the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of
operational planning, and will not limit the selection of any other approved alternative
silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules at the time of implementation of
operations.
Proposed Clearcuts

As described in Part A, Section 1.2.6.4, areas for clearcut harvest operations have been selected in accordance with the direction and standards in MNR’s applicable forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

FMP-16, which identifies the proposed clearcuts for the five-year term, will be prepared. Each proposed clearcut that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in FMP-16, with the accompanying silvicultural or biological rationale.

For each proposed clearcut, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, in accordance with the directions and standards in MNR’s approved forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns. The required area of stand level residual will be identified. Where practical, area that will be retained as stand level residual will be identified on the operations maps. If the area identified as stand level residual on the operations maps does not meet the requirements of the guide, the amount of additional area to be retained during the implementation of harvest operations, will be identified.

1.3.6 Roads

The corridor planning requirements for new primary and branch roads that will be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan are described in this section. Planning requirements for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new operational roads within the areas of operations, for the first five-year term, including any surplus areas and contingency areas, are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads are also described. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors

Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors and public comments at Stage Two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road that is required for the 20 year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be documented. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction must be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix VII.

Based on the public comments at Stage Two, any changes to the use management strategy for a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous forest management plan will be finalized, and documented in the format prescribed in Appendix VII.

Each proposed new primary road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded, in FMP-22. The proposed corridor for each new primary road will be
portrayed on the selected and optional harvest areas map, and the portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan will be identified. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the first five-year term of the forest management plan will be identified on the operations maps. The maps, FMP-22 and documentation of the rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be available at Stage Three.

1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors

Branch roads are roads that branch off existing or new primary or branch roads, providing access to and through areas of operations on a management unit. Whenever a new road is required to provide access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will be classified as a branch road.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads which are required for forest management purposes for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, including extensions to existing branch roads.

For each new branch road and extension to an existing branch road, a one kilometre-wide corridor will be identified, based on consideration of:

(a) the degree to which the physical conditions, non-timber values (i.e., natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the management unit), and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;

(b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario’s Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements); and

(c) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations.

The consideration of items (a) to (c) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for each new or extended branch road. For each new or extended branch road, a use management strategy will also be developed, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6. Documentation of the rationale for the proposed corridor, and associated use management strategy for the road, will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII.

A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads. If so, the rationale can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary documentation form (Appendix VII) for each new branch road to which it applies. A common use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads. If so,
the use management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary
documentation form (Appendix VII) for each new branch road to which it applies.

If a new branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial
park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR
policy, the applicable policy and Environmental Assessment Act requirements for parks and
protected areas will also apply.

Each proposed new branch road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the
road will be recorded, in FMP-22. The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the
ten-year period will be identified on the selected and optional harvest areas maps. The
portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the first five-year term
of the forest management plan will be identified on the operations maps. The maps, FMP-22
and documentation of the rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use
management strategy will be available at Stage Three.

1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern
(Part A, Section 1.3.5) by a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. In the
preparation of the forest management plan, these crossings will be planned for the portion of
the road that will be constructed during the first five-year term.

For each area of concern crossing, there will be a determination and documentation of:

(a) a 100 metre wide location for the road;
(b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure,
construction methods, mitigative measures, etc.); and
(c) acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location within the corridor, and
   the conditions on the construction, of the crossing.

The determination of the crossing location, construction conditions and acceptable variations
will involve consideration and documentation of:

(a) natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map
   for the management unit;
(b) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and
   organizations; and
(c) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

Acceptable variations to locations may include other crossing locations which may be
acceptable as a result of the considerations in the determination of the crossing location.
Acceptable variations to conditions on construction may include acceptable optional water
crossing structures, alternative construction methods and alternative mitigative measures.
For each area of concern crossing that involves a cultural heritage site or feature, including an area of high archeological potential, an archeological review will be completed, in accordance with MNR’s applicable forest management guide relating to cultural heritage values.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR policy, the applicable policy and Environmental Assessment Act requirements for parks and protected areas will also apply.

The 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction in the forest management plan are preliminary locations and conditions. Those locations and conditions will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.6), consistent with the acceptable variations described in the forest management plan.

The proposed 100 metre wide location, and where practical, acceptable variations on the location, for each new primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed corridor will be identified on the operations maps. The conditions on construction, and acceptable variations to the locations and conditions, will be documented in FMP-23.

Detailed documentation of the determination of the preliminary crossing location, construction conditions and acceptable variations will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VIII. The maps, FMP-23 and documentation of the determination of the preliminary crossing location, construction conditions and acceptable variations will be available at Stage Three.

1.3.6.4 Operational Roads

Operational roads are roads within areas of operations that provide short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and regenerated.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to new operational road crossings of areas of concern, and the development of a use management strategy for the new network of operational roads within each area of operations.

For new operational road crossings of areas of concern, any necessary conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossings will be identified for individual areas of concern or groups of areas of concern. The determination of the conditions will involve consideration and documentation of:

(a) natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the management unit;
(b) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations; and
(c) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

Conditions may include: specified water crossing structures and methods of construction; timing restrictions on crossing construction; marking or flagging of crossing locations prior to construction; and notification to directly affected persons in advance of crossing construction.

For each area of concern that involves a cultural heritage site or feature, including an area of high archeological potential, if conditions on new operational road crossings permit crossings, an archeological review will be completed, in accordance with MNR’s applicable forest management guide relating to cultural heritage values.

The conditions on the locations and/or construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern will be documented in FMP-23, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. Detailed documentation of the conditions will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VIII.

A use management strategy will be developed for each operational road or network of operational roads within each area of operations, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6. Documentation of the use management strategy will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII. A common use management strategy may apply to a number of new operational roads or networks of operational roads. If so, the use management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary documentation form (Appendix VII) for each new operational road or network of operational roads to which it applies.

Each operational road or network of operational roads will be identified, and the use management strategy for the road or network of roads will be recorded, in FMP-22.

The maps, FMP-22, FMP-23, documentation of the conditions on the locations and/or construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern, and documentation of the use management strategy for each new operational road or network of operational roads within each area of operations will be available at Stage Three.

1.3.6.5 Existing Roads

As described in Part A, Section 1.1.7.9, existing roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be identified on the values maps. Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in the Existing Roads Table, in the format prescribed in Appendix II. Each road or road network documented in the Existing Roads Table will be cross-referenced to the values maps.

If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section
1.3.6.6 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use management strategy for the road or road network will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII. Each proposed or changed use management strategy will be documented in the Existing Roads Table.

The Existing Roads Table, and documentation of proposed or changed use management strategies, will be available at Stage Three.

1.3.6.6 Use Management Strategies

For each existing and new road or road network on Crown land that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, a use management strategy is required. A use management strategy includes:

(a) maintenance provisions;
(b) monitoring provisions;
(c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;
(d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee to transfer the responsibility for the road or road network to MNR in the next 20 years, and the 5-year term in which the transfer is intended to occur; and
(e) where applicable, MNR’s preliminary indication on decommissioning provisions for the road or road network prior to transfer to MNR, including the potential removal of water crossings, and MNR’s preliminary indication on whether the road will be abandoned.

A use management strategy will be developed for each new primary and branch road, each new network of operational roads, and each existing road or road network which does not yet have a use management strategy or which requires changes to an existing use management strategy.

In the planning of corridors for new or extended primary roads for the next 20 years (Part A, Section 1.2.7 and 1.3.6.1), a use management strategy will be developed for each alternative corridor and finalized for the selected corridor. If a primary road corridor from a previous forest management plan is confirmed, but changes to the use management strategy are required, a revised use management strategy will be developed. For each new or extended branch road for the ten-year period of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2), a use management strategy will be developed. For each area of operations for the first five-year term (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4), a use management strategy will be developed for the new network of operational roads within the area of operations.

As described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.5, if a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, a new or revised use management strategy will be developed.
1.3.7 Revenues and Expenditures

The projected revenues from harvest, and projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate revenues and expenditures associated with the implementation of harvest, renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of revenues from harvest operations, and the forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source, will be summarized in FMP-24.

1.3.8 Assessment of Regeneration Success

The monitoring program to assess regeneration success for naturally and artificially regenerated areas will be developed. A summary of the area to be assessed for the determination of regeneration success will be provided in FMP-25.

1.3.9 Spatial Assessment

The assessments of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas and roads, and frequency distribution of forest disturbances, described in Part A, Section 1.2.6.4, will be updated to reflect the selected harvest areas and the placement of roads.

The landscape pattern of the selected harvest areas will be examined to assess whether the harvest areas provide for the achievement of spatial management objectives. The examination and assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas and roads, will be documented by updating FMP-13.

The frequency distribution of forest disturbances at the start and the end of the plan period, and the desired frequency distribution required by MNR’s approved forest management guide, as revised from time to time, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be documented by updating FMP-12. An examination of the frequency distribution of forest disturbances will assess whether the planned frequency distribution will be achieved over time. The documentation of the forest disturbance frequency distribution assessment will be updated.
1.3.10 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

An assessment of the expected effect of proposed types and levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations on the achievement of progress towards long-term management direction will be prepared. The assessment will:

(a) compare the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations to the projections in the long-term management direction;
(b) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the selected harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;
(c) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest volume of the selected harvest area, on the achievement of the long-term management direction; and
(d) examine the effect of the amount of surplus harvest area on the achievement of the long-term management direction.

The assessment will be supported by modeling similar to the forest modeling for the development of the long-term management direction. The proposed operations for the ten-year period will be incorporated into the analysis tools for this assessment.

If proposed types and levels of operations deviate from the projections in the long-term management direction, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided. If there are significant effects on objective achievement and/or sustainability, it may be necessary to adjust the areas of operations for the ten-year period, and complete the required planning and assessment of operations.

1.3.11 Determination of Sustainability

In the preparation of a forest management plan, the last step in the determination of sustainability involves updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.6.6), based on the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit.

The assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3) will be updated to reflect changes as a result of the planning of operations, using the updated spatial assessments (Part A, Section 1.3.9).

The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives and the comparison of proposed operations to the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.3.10), and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.
The determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) Are the objective achievement levels within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?
(b) Is there a pattern to the objectives that are not within the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the objective achievement levels related to a common forest type, or a particular *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1))?
(c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
(d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?

If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the desirable levels will be achieved.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit;
(b) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved; and
(c) provide a conclusion that the forest management plan has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

### 1.3.12 Summary Map

A summary map(s) will be prepared and available at Stage Three. The summary map(s) will include:

(a) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan;
(b) the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the plan;
(c) the optional areas for harvest operations;
(d) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are required for the next 20 years;
(e) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
(f) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan, and the previous ten years.
1.3.13 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.3, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

1.4.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of the draft forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Four of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4). Figure A-7 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan

Following the public review of proposed operations for first five-year term, the planning team will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5. The planning team will review the comments, consider if changes to the proposed operations are required, make the necessary changes, and produce the draft forest management plan in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the draft forest management plan. For those components of the draft forest management plan that require expertise beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director do not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft forest management plan.

A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-2. The List of Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides. The List of Exceptions will accompany the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page.
**Figure A-7: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Four**

**PHASE I: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

- **Stage One**
  - Invitation to Participate

- **Stage Two**
  - Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

- **Stage Three**
  - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

- **Stage Four**
  - MNR Review
  - Comments Due

- **Stage Five**
  - Final List of Required Alterations
  - MNR Plan Approval

---

**Preparation for Stage Four - Preparation, Submission and Review of Draft Forest Management Plan**

- Prepare draft plan
- Submit draft plan to MNR
- Present draft plan to local citizens committee
- MNR internal review
- MNR to prepare preliminary list of required alterations
- 60 day public review period following the information centre
- Issue Resolution as needed
- Prepare for Stage Four consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.3.4)

---

**NOTE:** This schedule represents the "ideal" - exact dates may vary.
Prior to submission of the draft forest management plan to MNR, the plan author will ensure that:

- the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the "Forest Management Planning Manual;"
- all calculations are correct;
- the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
- the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.

1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The plan author will submit at least three (3) copies of the draft forest management plan to the MNR District Manager on or before the scheduled date for draft plan submission.

The copies of the draft forest management plan will be distributed as follows:

- one copy will be retained at the MNR district office for district staff review and subsequent public review;
- one copy will be forwarded to the appropriate MNR regional office for regional staff review and subsequent public review;
- one copy will be retained at the MNR district office, and forwarded at a later date with MNR’s preliminary list of required alterations to a location in Toronto provided by MNR for public review; and
- any other copies will be distributed to the locations identified in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft forest management plan to the local citizens committee. At the request of the local citizens committee, a copy of the draft forest management plan, or copies of specified sections of the draft plan, will be provided to the local citizens committee for review. After that review, the local citizens committee will prepare a brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the draft forest management plan. The statement will accompany the list of Forest Management Plan - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-3) in the draft forest management plan that is available for public review.

1.4.4 MNR Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The MNR District Manager will confirm that the draft forest management plan is complete before the commencement of the MNR review.

A period of 60 days is provided for the MNR review of the draft forest management plan by appropriate MNR staff, including MNR regional staff. In most situations, MNR reviewers will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have received...
preliminary MNR support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.1.5). MNR district and regional staff will also have reviewed the long-term management direction, as part of the MNR Regional Director’s preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction, prior to the planning of operations for the first five-year term (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

The purpose of the MNR review of the draft forest management plan is to confirm that the plan meets the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The review will also confirm that relevant policies and obligations have been considered; that forest management guides have been properly used; and that identified exceptions are acceptable.

The review by the MNR district will confirm that planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft forest management plan. MNR district reviewers will confirm that the plan is complete; that all calculations are correct; and that the plan is understandable by those who must refer to, implement and monitor the implementation of the plan.

The review by the MNR region will focus on matters that have cross-district or broad regional implications, and consistency in the application of forest management guides. Regional reviewers will assess how advice provided by regional staff has been reflected in the draft forest management plan.

1.4.4.1 MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations

The product of the MNR review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNR district and regional reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the local citizens committee.

The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required alterations. The required alterations from MNR regional reviewers will be compiled and forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 60-day MNR review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will resolve any disagreements among MNR reviewers. The MNR District Manager will provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review of the draft forest management plan.
1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary

A draft forest management plan summary will be prepared by the planning team member assigned the responsibility in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1). The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft forest management plan, by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for their own use. The content requirements of the forest management plan summary are prescribed in Part B, Section 7.0.

The summary will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least 30 days before the information centre to review the draft forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4). For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, a French language version of the summary will be prepared.

1.4.6 Distribution of the Draft Forest Management Plan

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, the draft forest management plan, the preliminary list of required alterations, and the draft forest management plan summary, will be available for public review at:

| (a) | the appropriate MNR district or area office; |
| (b) | the office of the sustainable forest licensee; |
| (c) | the appropriate MNR regional office; and |
| (d) | a location in Toronto provided by MNR. |

The draft forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request. For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, the French language version of the draft forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

1.4.7 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.
1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

1.5.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft forest management plan, and MNR review and approval of the forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Five of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.5). Figure A-8 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

During the public review of the draft forest management plan, MNR reviewers will meet with the plan author to discuss the draft forest management plan and the preliminary list of required alterations, and to determine how the required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the forest management plan.

1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations

Following the public review of the draft forest management plan and MNR’s preliminary list of required alterations, the plan author and the MNR staff person designated as coordinator of the list of required alterations in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5.

Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft forest management plan, the plan author and planning team will review the comments from the public and Aboriginal communities, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether or not to incorporate comments from the public and Aboriginal communities in the final list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 3.4.1) that is made during the public review of the draft forest management plan will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will make the necessary changes to the list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author;
(c) the local citizens committee;
(d) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan;
(e) any person who has been involved in an issue resolution decision during the public review of the draft forest management plan; and

(f) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations that is provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 10 to 12 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary

The forest management plan will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the forest management plan to facilitate the MNR review. A list of major changes to the draft forest management plan will be prepared and will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the forest management plan to the local citizens committee. After that presentation, the local citizens committee will confirm or update the brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan. The statement will accompany the list of Forest Management Plan - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-3) in the forest management plan that is available for public inspection.

Prior to submission of the forest management plan to MNR for review and approval, the plan author and planning team, including the representative of the local citizens committee, will make a presentation of the forest management plan to the MNR Regional Director. The MNR District Manager and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will attend the presentation.

The draft forest management plan summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the forest management plan.

1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

The plan author will submit at least four (4) copies of the forest management plan to the MNR District Manager. Three (3) of these copies are required for MNR review of the revised forest management plan, and distribution to the required locations for the public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.5). The fourth copy will be forwarded to MNR’s Forest Management Branch after public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5.5).
Figure A-8: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Five

**PHASE I: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

| Stage One | Invitation to Participate |
| Stage Two | Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction |
| Stage Three | Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations |
| Stage Four | Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan |
| Stage Five | Inspection of MNR Approved Plan |

**Preparation for Stage Five - Plan Revision and Approval**
- MNR advisors meet with plan author to discuss required alterations
- Compile public comments
- Prepare final list of required alterations
- Present plan to the MNR Regional Director
- Plan author to address required alterations
- Complete issue resolution, if applicable
- Prepare plan summary
- Summary of public consultation
- Submit final plan to MNR
- Public inspection of the MNR-approved plan
- Prepare for Stage Five consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.3.5)

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY.
The plan author will also submit two (2) copies of the documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the forest management plan to the MNR District Manager to facilitate the MNR review of the forest management plan. A period of approximately 15 days is provided for MNR review and approval of the forest management plan.

After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A), and recommend the forest management plan for approval by the MNR Regional Director.

The MNR District Manager’s signature on the title, certification and approval page certifies that:

(a) the forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people, and the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides;

(b) all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides have been identified; and

(c) all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.

If the MNR Regional Director agrees with the MNR District Manager’s recommendation, the MNR Regional Director will approve the forest management plan. The approval of the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director confirms that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

1.5.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.5, the MNR-approved forest management plan and the forest management plan summary will be available for public inspection at:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;

(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;

(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and

(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, the French language version of the forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

A copy of the forest management plan summary will be provided to the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, and the appropriate Ministry of the Environment regional office.
A copy of the MNR-approved forest management plan will be provided to MNR's Forest Management Branch. Additional copies of the forest management plan may be provided to other locations (e.g., adjacent MNR districts or regions), as specified in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

1.5.6 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.5, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

After the public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan, a copy will be available for public viewing for the ten-year period of the forest management plan at each of the following locations:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.
2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

If the MNR Regional Director’s decision on endorsement of the year three management unit annual report supports the continuation of the long-term management direction for the management unit, the planning of operations for the second five-year term will proceed in the fifth year of the forest management plan. Part B, Section 8.0 describes the documentation requirements for the planned operations for the second five-year term. After the operations have been approved for implementation, the operations will be added to the forest management plan.

Any approved access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan, that are not completed during the first five-year term, remain approved for implementation during the second five-year term, with no further planning or approval requirements.

2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations

2.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the second five-year term, in preparation for Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.1). Figure A-9 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the planned operations for the second five-year term.

2.1.2 Updates

The plan author, in conjunction with the MNR District Manager and planning team, will review and update the organizational structure and resources to support the planning of operations for the second five-year term, and update the background information. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

2.1.2.1 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee

The membership and terms of reference of the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will be reviewed and updated to reflect changes in membership, to assign team member responsibilities, and to define the planning schedule for the preparation, review and approval of operations for the second five-year term. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director will approve the updated terms of reference.
**Figure A-9: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage One**

**PHASE II: Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage One</th>
<th>Stage Two</th>
<th>Stage Three</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Preparation for Stage One - Planning of Proposed Operations**
- contact Aboriginal communities
- contact resource-based tourism operators
- MNR Regional Director endorsement of year 3 annual report
- confirm/update:
  - planning team membership and terms of reference
  - local citizens committee membership and terms of reference
  - Aboriginal consultation approach for each community
  - background information
  - analysis of renewal and tending
  - resource stewardship agreements
- confirm, adjust proposed operations and roads for 2nd five-year term
- develop prescriptions for operations for 2nd five-year term
- prepare for Phase II, Stage One consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.4.1)

**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE “IDEAL” - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

The membership and terms of reference of the local citizens committee (Part A, Section 3.2) will also be reviewed and updated.

**2.1.2.2 Resource Stewardship Agreements**

One year before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or uses may be affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan. For operators with an existing resource stewardship agreement, the letter will invite the operator to review and update the agreement, and provide a reminder of the opportunities for the public and Aboriginal communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in the agreement related to forest management activities. For operators without a resource stewardship agreement, the letter will invite the operator to discuss the development of a resource stewardship agreement. Specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for the review at Phase II: Stage One of public consultation.
The values map for resource-based tourism values produced by MNR for the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8), will be updated to support the review and/or development of resource stewardship agreements.

An up-to-date list of licensed resource-based tourism operators with facilities on the management unit, and licensed resource-based tourism operators without facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to MNR by the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation.

2.1.2.3 Background Information

Relevant background information used in the production of the forest management plan will be reviewed and updated. MNR will update and provide the most current, relevant information available on natural resource features, land uses and values for the management unit.

MNR will provide updated background information that will include:

(a) updated values maps;
(b) new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation; and
(c) the Aboriginal Background Information Report for the current forest management plan.

The updated background information will also include:

(a) the year three management unit annual report for the current forest management plan; and
(b) the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan (or Report of Past Forest Operations, if applicable).

2.1.2.4 Roads Inventory

The planning team will assemble information on existing roads on the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. The information will include existing information on the location, responsibility assignment and use management strategy for each road or road network.

Existing roads and approved primary road corridors will be portrayed on the updated values maps (Part A, Section 2.1.2.3). Primary roads, and roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, will be differentiated. The maps will also identify roads with access restrictions.

The planning team will update the information in the Existing Roads Table of the current forest management plan (Part B, Section 2.3), using the most up-to-date information available. Roads and road networks which were constructed by the sustainable forest licensee
during the first five-year term of the forest management plan will be added to the Existing Roads Table. Roads and road networks that are no longer the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be removed from the Existing Roads Table. Each road or road network documented in the Existing Roads Table will be cross-referenced to the values maps.

2.1.2.5 Analysis of Renewal and Tending Requirements

The analysis of renewal and tending activities undertaken in the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2), will be reviewed and updated. The updated analysis will use the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan and the year three management unit annual report for the current forest management plan as sources of information. The updated analysis will be used in the planning of renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term.

2.1.2.6 Aboriginal Consultation Approach

Before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities. The purpose of this contact is to confirm the continued use of the consultation approach developed with the community for the forest management plan (Part A, Section 4.4).

In those circumstances where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been developed, prior to the commencement of the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to invite the community to discuss the development of develop a consultation approach suitable to the community.

Any changes to an existing consultation approach, or any new consultation approach, will be developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

2.1.3 Selection of Areas of Operations

Selected harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term, which were identified and portrayed on the operations maps in the forest management plan (Part A, Sections 1.3.3.1 and 1.3.3.3), will be confirmed or changed if necessary.

If there are changes to the selected harvest areas, any new areas must be selected from the optional harvest areas identified in the forest management plan, and a rationale for those new areas must be documented. The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1 will apply.
If additional contingency area is required, any new contingency area must be selected from the optional harvest areas identified in the forest management plan. The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2 will apply.

The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3 will apply to the selection of areas for renewal and tending.

Selected harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term will be portrayed on the operations maps.

2.1.4 Prescriptions for Operations

For the areas of operations for the second-year term, including any surplus harvest areas and new contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Prescriptions will be developed for areas of concern, and harvest, renewal and tending areas.

2.1.4.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

The planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern will include confirming operational prescriptions that were developed in the forest management plan, where appropriate, and developing new operational prescriptions, where necessary. If new operational prescriptions or changes to the existing operational prescriptions are required, the same planning requirements which applied to the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern within the areas selected for operations in the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, will apply.

2.1.4.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

The silvicultural ground rules that were developed in the production of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) will be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new silvicultural ground rules or changes to the existing silvicultural ground rules are required, the same planning requirements which applied to the development of silvicultural ground rules in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2, Silvicultural Ground Rules, will apply.

Locations where silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur will be identified in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.2, Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest.

For proposed clearcuts for the second five-year term, the requirements identified in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2, Proposed Clearcuts will apply.
2.1.5 Roads

The corridor planning requirements for new primary and branch roads that will be constructed during the second five-year term are described in this section. Planning requirements for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new operational roads within the areas of operations, for the second five-year term, including any surplus areas and contingency areas, are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads are also described.

2.1.5.1 Primary and Branch Road Corridors

Each one-kilometre wide primary road corridor within which a road will be constructed during the second five-year term will be confirmed, or changed if necessary.

Each one-kilometre wide branch road corridor within which a road will be constructed during the second five-year term will be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new areas have been selected for operations, new corridors for branch roads, which are required to access the new areas of operations, will be identified.

If changes to previously planned corridors are required, or new corridors are required, the same planning requirements which applied to the planning of new primary and branch road corridors in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Sections 1.2.7 and 1.3.6, will apply.

For each confirmed primary or branch road corridor, the existing use management strategy will also be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new corridors are required for branch roads to access new areas of operations, a use management strategy will be developed for each new corridor. The same planning requirements which applied to the development of use management strategies in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, will apply.

2.1.5.2 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads

Each crossing of an area of concern within the one kilometre-wide corridor for a new primary or branch road that will be constructed during the second five-year term will be planned. The same planning requirements which applied to the planning of area of concern crossings by new primary and branch roads for the first five-year term in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3, will apply.

2.1.5.3 Operational Roads

For the selected harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term, conditions on new operational roads within areas of concern will be
developed. The planning of conditions on new operational roads within areas of concern will include confirming conditions which were developed in the forest management plan, where appropriate, and developing new conditions, where necessary. If new conditions or changes to the existing conditions are required, the same planning requirements which applied to the planning of conditions on new operational roads within areas of concern in the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.4, will apply.

A use management strategy will be developed for the new network of operational roads within each area of operations, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6.

2.1.5.4 Existing Roads

If an existing use management strategy will be changed for an existing road or road network, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use management strategy for the road or road network will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII. Each changed use management strategy will be documented in the Existing Roads Table (Appendix II).

2.1.6 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values

The Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be reviewed and updated, as described in Part A, Section 4.6.3, to address the proposed operations for the second five-year term.

2.1.7 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.1, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

2.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Planned Operations

2.2.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, in preparation for Stage Two of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). Figure A-10 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the planned operations for the second five-year term.
Figure A-10: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Two

**PHASE II: Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term**

**In Year 5**

- **Stage One** Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
  - Submit draft Planned Operations
  - Comments Due: Feb
  - Comments Due: Apr

- **Stage Two** Review of Draft Planned Operations
  - Submit final Planned Operations
  - MNR Approval

- **Stage Three** Inspection of MNR Approved Planned Operations
  - Approved Operations

- **Implement Phase II Operations**
  - Dec
  - Feb
  - Apr

**Preparing for Stage Two - Preparation, Submission and Review of Draft Planned Operations**

- make any required adjustments to operations as a result of public consultation
- prepare all necessary tables, text and other documentation
- submit draft planned operations to MNR
- MNR to prepare preliminary list of required alterations
- prepare summary of draft planned operations
- prepare for Phase II, Stage Two of consultation (see Part A, Section 3.3.4.2)

**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

### 2.2.2 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations

Following the public review of proposed operations for second five-year term, the planning team will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5. The planning team will review the comments, consider if changes to the proposed operations are required, make the necessary changes to the proposed operations, and produce the draft planned operations in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B, Sections 8.0 and 9.0.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A) of the draft planned operations. For those components of the draft planned operations that require expertise beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign

A-84 Forest Management Planning Manual June 2004
the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-5B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the draft planned operations, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director do not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft planned operations.

A List of Exceptions, as described in Part A, Section 1.4.2, will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-6. The List of Exceptions will accompany the Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

Prior to submission of the draft planned operations to MNR, the plan author will ensure that:

(a) the draft planned operations is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the Forest Management Planning Manual;
(b) all calculations are correct;
(c) the draft planned operations is edited for ease of understanding; and
(d) the draft planned operations contains page numbers and line numbers.

2.2.3 Submission of the Draft Planned Operations

The plan author will submit at least three (3) copies of the draft planned operations to the MNR District Manager on or before the scheduled submission date. The copies of the draft planned operations will be distributed to the same locations, and in the same manner, as the draft forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.4.3.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft planned operations to the local citizens committee. At the request of the local citizens committee, a copy of the draft planned operations, or copies of specified sections of the draft planned operations, will be provided to the local citizens committee for review. After that review, the local citizens committee will prepare a brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the draft planned operations. The statement will accompany the list of Phase II Planned Operations - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-7) in the draft planned operations that is available for public review.

2.2.4 MNR Review of the Draft Planned Operations

The MNR District Manager will confirm that the draft planned operations is complete before the commencement of the MNR review.

A period of 30 days is provided for the MNR review of the draft planned operations by MNR district and regional staff. In most situations, MNR reviewers will be familiar with the draft planned operations, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning team.
The purpose of the MNR review of the draft planned operations is to confirm that the planned operations meet the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The review will also confirm that relevant policies and obligations have been considered; that the planned operations are consistent with the approved forest management plan; that forest management guides have been properly used; and that identified exceptions are acceptable.

The review by the MNR district will confirm that planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft planned operations. District reviewers will confirm that the draft planned operations is complete; that all calculations are correct; and that the draft planned operations is understandable by those who must refer to, implement and monitor the implementation of the planned operations.

The review by the MNR region will focus on matters that have cross-district or broad regional implications, and consistency in the application of forest management guides. Regional reviewers will assess how advice provided by regional staff has been reflected in the draft planned operations.

2.2.4.1 MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations

The product of the MNR review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNR district and regional reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the local citizens committee.

The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required alterations. The required alterations from MNR regional reviewers will be compiled and forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 30-day MNR review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will resolve any disagreements among MNR reviewers. The MNR District Manager will provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review of the draft planned operations.

2.2.5 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations Summary

A draft planned operations summary will be prepared by the planning team member assigned the responsibility in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1). The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft planned operations, by having a summary of the planned operations available for reviewers to keep for their own use.
The content requirements of the planned operations summary are prescribed in Part B, Section 8.9.

The summary will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least 10 days before the public review of the draft planned operations (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, a French language version of the summary will be prepared.

2.2.6 Distribution of the Draft Planned Operations

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, the draft planned operations, the preliminary list of required alterations, and the draft planned operations summary, will be available for public review at:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

The draft planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request. For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, the French language version of the draft planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

2.2.7 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

2.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Revision and Approval of the Planned Operations

2.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, and MNR review and approval of the planned operations, in preparation for Stage Three of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.3). Figure A-11 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the planned operations for the second five-year term.

During the public review of the draft planned operations, MNR reviewers will meet with the plan author to discuss the draft planned operations and the preliminary list of required alterations, and to determine how the required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the planned operations.
Figure A-11: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Three

PHASE II: Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term

In Year 5

Stage One
Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage Two
Review of Draft Planned Operations

Stage Three
Inspection of MNR Approved Planned Operations

NOTE: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

2.3.2 Final List of Required Alterations

Following the public review of the draft planned operations and MNR’s preliminary list of required alterations, the plan author and the MNR staff person designated as coordinator of the list of required alterations in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5.

Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft planned operations, the plan author and planning team will review the comments and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether or not to incorporate comments from the public and Aboriginal communities in the final list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 3.4.1) that is made during the public
review of the draft planned operations will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will make the necessary changes to the list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author;
(c) the local citizens committee;
(d) any person who has requested a change to the draft planned operations;
(e) any person who has been involved in an issue resolution decision during the public review of the draft planned operations; and
(f) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations that is provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the planned operations by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 10 to 12 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

2.3.3 Preparation of the Planned Operations and Planned Operations Summary

The planned operations will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the planned operations to facilitate the MNR review. A list of major changes to the draft planned operations will be prepared and will be included in the supplementary documentation of the planned operations.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the planned operations to the local citizens committee. After that presentation, the local citizens committee will confirm or update the brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the planned operations. The statement will accompany the list of Phase II Planned Operations - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-7) in the planned operations that is available for public inspection.

Prior to submission of the planned operations to MNR for review and approval, the plan author and planning team, including the representative of the local citizens committee, will make a presentation of the planned operations to the MNR Regional Director. The MNR District Manager and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will attend the presentation.
The draft planned operations summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the planned operations.

2.3.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Planned Operations

The plan author will submit at least four (4) copies of the planned operations to the MNR District Manager. Three (3) of these copies are required for the MNR review of the revisions to the planned operations and distribution to the required locations for the public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations (Part A, Section 3.3.4.3). The fourth copy will be forwarded to MNR’s Forest Management Branch after completion of the public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations (Part A, Section 2.3.5).

The plan author will also submit two (2) copies of the documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the planned operations to the MNR District Manager to facilitate the MNR review of the planned operations. A period of approximately 15 days is provided for MNR review and approval of the planned operations.

After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign the Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A), and recommend the planned operations for approval by the MNR Regional Director.

The MNR District Manager’s signature on the title, certification and approval page certifies that:

(a) the planned operations has been prepared in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people, and the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides;

(b) the planned operations are consistent with the approved forest management plan;

(c) all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides have been identified; and

(d) all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.

If the MNR Regional Director agrees with the MNR District Manager’s recommendation, the MNR Regional Director will approve the planned operations, and the approved operations will be added to the approved forest management plan.
2.3.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Planned Operations

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.3, the MNR-approved planned operations and the planned operations summary will be available for public inspection at:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and,
(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, the French language version of the planned operations summary will be available for distribution to the public upon request.

A copy of the planned operations summary will be provided to the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, and the appropriate Ministry of the Environment regional office.

A copy of the MNR-approved planned operations will be provided to MNR's Forest Management Branch. Additional copies of the planned operations may be provided to other locations (e.g., adjacent MNR districts or regions), as specified in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1).

2.3.6 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.3, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

2.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations

After the public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations, a copy will be available for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the same locations as the approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.6).
3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

3.1 Introduction

The forest management plan will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A local citizens committee must be in place to assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.2).

Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the forest management plan by interested and affected persons and organizations, and by the general public, are provided through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 3.3). As described in Part A, Section 1.0, there are two planning phases in the forest management planning process. Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning and three stages in Phase II planning (Part A, Section 3.3). In addition, members of the public can consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the local citizens committee during the preparation of the forest management plan.

A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.4.1). As well, a formal process is provided for any persons to make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.4.2).

By January 31st of each year, MNR's Forest Management Branch will produce a list of all management units. This list will identify all forest management plans currently in preparation, all forest management plans expected to be initiated in that year, and all management units where operational planning for the second five-year term is scheduled in that year. The list will be provided to any person who requests a copy, and will be available at each of MNR's area, district and regional offices, as well as MNR's Forest Management Branch, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR. The list will also be provided to the regional offices, and the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, of the Ministry of Environment.

3.2 Local Citizens Committee

3.2.1 Introduction

A local citizens committee, comprised of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests, will be established by the MNR District Manager, in accordance with the requirements of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, for the applicable MNR district or management unit. The local citizens committee will assist the plan author, the interdisciplinary planning team and the MNR District Manager in the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan. For some management units, the MNR District Manager may establish additional local citizens committees, or sub-committees.
3.2.2 Purpose

The local citizens committee will participate as an integral part of the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan by:

(a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may attend planning team meetings as observers;
(b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon stages of the planning process;
(c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others involved in forest management planning;
(d) increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:
   (ii) participating in its implementation;
   (iii) providing advice on public notices;
   (iv) participating in developing and/or issuing supplemental notices;
   (v) providing advice to the planning team on the content and presentation of information and maps at information centres;
   (vi) having representatives attend and participate at information centres;
   (vii) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;
(e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest and benefits;
(f) participating in the development, identification and description of management objectives, strategies, problems and issues;
(g) participating in the development of values maps;
(h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of trade-offs which must be made during the planning process, and the resolution of problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the planning process;
(i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;
(j) providing opportunities for a representative of the committee to attend the presentation of the draft forest management plan to the MNR Regional Director;
(k) providing advice to the MNR District Manager when discretionary decisions must be made (e.g., categorization of amendments, and responses to requests for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management operations in the forest management plan);
(l) producing regular reports of the committee’s activities;
(m) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;
(n) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the opportunity:
   (i) to provide comments on forest operations;
   (ii) to identify concerns and issues;
   (iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and
   (iv) to provide any other relevant information; and
(o) providing input to the development of district insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s) invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a district insect pest management program.

3.2.3 Membership and Organization

The local citizens committee will be a standing committee with members appointed by the MNR District Manager. Where a management unit crosses MNR administrative boundaries, the MNR District Manager from the lead district will establish the local citizens committee in consultation with the other MNR District Manager(s).

Normally, there will be a single local citizens committee for a management unit. However, the MNR District Manager may establish additional local citizens committees or sub-committees, where a management unit encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.

The MNR District Manager and the local citizens committee(s) will develop a protocol which describes how multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees will function. The protocol will address the roles and inter-relationships of the multiple committees or sub-committees in public consultation, development of the long-term management direction, planning of operations, preparation of local citizens committee reports and independent forest audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of a lead committee will be considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference for the local citizens committee(s) (Part A, Section 3.2.4).

The membership of the local citizens committee will include a number of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests from the communities within or adjacent to the management unit. The majority of appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by local interest groups. Persons directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing the forest management plan are eligible to be members, but will not make up the majority of the committee.

Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the local citizens committee should include:

(a) local business;
(b) tourism industry;
(c) anglers and hunters;
(d) Aboriginal communities;
(e) forest industry;
(f) naturalists;
(g) municipalities;
(h) trappers and other resource users;
(i) other Crown land recreationalists;
(j) forest industry trade unions;
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(k) woodworkers;
(l) small independent loggers;
(m) mineral sector;
(n) waterpower sector;
(o) Chamber of Commerce member or Economic Development Officer;
(p) local environmental groups;
(q) local heritage groups or organizations;
(r) other interest groups; and
(s) the general public.

3.2.4 Terms of Reference

Terms of reference for the local citizens committee will be prepared (or updated for an existing committee) at the beginning of Phase I planning, and will be updated at the beginning of Phase II planning (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1). For each management unit, the local citizens committee, with assistance from MNR and the plan author, will develop a single terms of reference. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The terms of reference will contain:

(a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
(b) the date of each member’s appointment to the committee;
(c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
(d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
(e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the forest management plan, (e.g., meetings prior to information centres and submission of draft and final plans, dates for committee reports, etc.);
(f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
(g) required funding;
(h) rules, developed by and for the local citizens committee, with respect to any procedural matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management planning and plan implementation, including:
(i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
(ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
(iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
(iv) attendance at information centres by committee members;
(v) circulation of information among committee members;
(vi) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member of the planning team;
(vii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the representative to the planning team;
(viii) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by individual committee members, and how the committee will address those declarations; and
(ix) preparation of committee reports;
(i) background material and training required to assist committee members with their roles and responsibilities and forest management planning matters; and
(j) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-committees will function (Part A, Section 3.2.3).

3.2.5 Administration

Members of the local citizens committee will be reimbursed by MNR for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan. The committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team will be provided a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings.

MNR will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial support and typing of committee reports), in order to assist the committee in the efficient and effective conduct of its affairs. MNR will ensure that training material on the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

The MNR District Manager will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, in order to ensure achievement of the local citizens committee purposes.

For Phase I planning, the following materials for the management unit will be provided to the committee in summary form, prior to the commencement of public consultation:

(a) background information;
(b) data describing non-timber resources; and
(c) data describing the timber resource.

At the commencement of Phase II planning, the material will be updated and provided in summary form to the committee.

3.2.6 Reports and Records

During the preparation of the forest management plan, the local citizens committee will produce reports of its activities. These reports will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning. Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference for the local citizens committee. In situations where multiple local citizens
committees or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single committee report will be prepared.

The local citizens committee report for each of Phase I and Phase II planning will include:

(a) a list of all members of the local citizens committee, and their affiliations, if any;
(b) the committee’s activities during the preparation of the forest management plan, such as:
   (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during the planning process;
   (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;
   (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members and recommendations for improvements;
   (iv) participation in the development of the values maps and the long-term management direction;
   (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g., supplemental notices, information centres); and
   (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;
(c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;
(d) an assessment of the co-operation provided to the committee by MNR and the plan author;
(e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any recommendations for change; and
(f) a discussion of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan.

For Phase I planning, the committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:

(a) Stage Two – a report of committee activities to date;
(b) Stage Three – an updated report of committee activities to date;
(c) Stage Four
   (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft forest management plan; and
   (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest management plan summary; and
(d) Stage Five
   (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved forest management plan; and
   (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the forest management plan summary.

For Phase II planning, the committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:
(a) Stage One – a report of committee activities to date;
(b) Stage Two
   (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft planned operations; and
   (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft summary of planned operations; and
(c) Stage Three
   (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the planned operations; and
   (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the summary of planned operations.

The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee, will be available for public review. The final reports of the committee for each of Phase I and Phase II planning will form part of the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

3.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation

Each forest management plan and forest management plan summary will contain a list of all members of the local citizens committee, and their affiliations, if any.

Each forest management plan will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that reports on the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan. A separate statement will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning, and included as part of Part B, Figure B-3. The statement will indicate that the committee's report is included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan. In situations where multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single statement that represents the agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning.

3.3 Public Consultation Requirements

3.3.1 Introduction

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning (Figure A-12) and three stages in Phase II planning (Figure A-13). The requirements for Aboriginal involvement in Phase I and Phase II planning are described in Part A, Sections 4.4 and 4.5.

3.3.2 General Requirements

This section describes general requirements of public consultation which apply in Phase I and Phase II planning. These general requirements address public notices, communications with
the planning team and local citizens committee, MNR’s obligations to respond to public
comments and submissions, the French Language Services Act and the Environmental Bill of
Rights.

3.3.2.1 Public Notices

Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation, in accordance with
responsibilities outlined in the terms of reference for the planning team. The timing and
contents of each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 3.3.3 and 3.3.4, which also
describe the information that will be available at each stage of public consultation. Public
notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-
technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of,
public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on
MNR’s mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

(a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and
their successors, and in particular:
   (i) local school boards;
   (ii) local medical officers of health;
   (iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local
   services board and Chamber of Commerce;
   (iv) Manager, Operational Services, Regional Office, Ministry of
   Transportation;
   (v) Programs Officer, Provincial Lines and Forestry Services, Hydro One;
   (vi) Regional Office, Ministry of the Environment;
   (vii) Regional Office, Ministry of Culture;
   (viii) Regional Office, Ministry of Tourism and Recreation;
   (ix) Regional Office, Ministry of Northern Development and Mines;
   (x) Department of Indian Affairs (Canada);
   (xi) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic
   Region;
   (xii) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
   (xiii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;

(b) each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose
interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and
implementation of the forest management plan;

(c) appropriate Aboriginal treaty organizations and tribal councils;

(d) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an
interest in forest management planning for the management unit;

(e) members of the local citizens committee; and

(f) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management
planning for the management unit, including those people who may be directly
affected by forest management operations during the ten-year period of the
forest management plan, such as private land owners, tourist operators and trappers. MNR will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who may be directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting records of registered trapline areas and mining lands.

As additional interested and affected persons and organizations are identified, MNR will update the mailing list.

Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media. Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each public notice will contain the following information:

(a) a statement of the purpose of the public consultation opportunity;
(b) a description of the subject matter of the public consultation opportunity;
(c) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
(d) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) that information and maps are available, including the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours, and during non-business hours by arranging an appointment with the MNR District Manager;
(e) a statement that the values maps may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(f) a summary of the schedule for the remaining formal public consultation opportunities;
(g) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act; and
(h) the names of the plan author and other members of the planning team, and information concerning how to contact the plan author, the MNR District Manager and a representative of the local citizens committee.

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation are described in Part A, Sections 3.3.3 and 3.3.4.

Additional Information Centres

The planning team, with advice from the local citizens committee, may choose to hold information centres in addition to the required information centres. If an additional information centre(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.
Supplemental Notices

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental notice will be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and Aboriginal communities of the information centre. This notice will normally be issued by MNR; however, the sustainable forest licensee and/or the local citizens committee may provide this notice. The local citizens committee will be consulted on the appropriate format for the supplemental notice (e.g., local radio or television announcement, flyers, etc.).

3.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee Communication

The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with interested and affected persons and organizations to seek their input into the planning process and to facilitate contact between them and the local citizens committee. For example, the planning team will consult with affected trappers and recreationalists in order to identify recreational trails and trails used for accessing working traplines.

Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange for meetings with representatives of the planning team and the local citizens committee at any time during the planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members during non-business hours will be provided.

3.3.2.3 Responses to Comments

MNR, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a forest management plan. This requirement will also apply to all verbal comments if a written response has been requested. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered. All comments, submissions and responses will be summarized in the public consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan (Part B, Section 6.0).

3.3.2.4 French Language Services Act

The French Language Services Act, will govern the public consultation requirements for forest management planning in designated areas under the act.

At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:

(a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the French language;
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

1. (b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French language media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the English language;

2. (c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at all information centres or other consultation forums;

3. (d) comment forms will be available in both the English and French languages;

4. (e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French language comments and submissions; and

5. (f) the summary of the long-term management direction available at Stages Two and Three of public consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.3.3.3), and the forest management plan summary available at Stages Four and Five of public consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5), will be prepared in both the English and French languages, and will be available simultaneously for public distribution, upon request.

3.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights

Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation in Phase I and Phase II planning.

For each of Phase I and Phase II planning, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at Stage One of public consultation. At each successive stage of public consultation, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry.

MNR’s guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

3.3.3 Phase I Consultation

Phase I planning involves the determination of the long-term management direction for the forest and the detailed planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan. Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning. Figure A-12 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the ten-year forest management plan.

3.3.3.1 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate

Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to participate in the development of the forest management plan. This notice will be issued
**Figure A-12: Overview of Phase I Public Consultation**

**PHASE 1: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

- **Stage One**: Invitation to Participate
  - Meetings with Aboriginal communities and resource-based tourism operators

- **Stage Two**: Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction
  - Notice
  - Notice

- **Stage Three**: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
  - Comments Due
  - 30-day Notice
  - 30-day Notice

- **Stage Four**: Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan
  - Comments Due
  - MNR Internal Review 60 days

- **Stage Five**: Inspection of MNR Approved Plan
  - Comments Due
  - MNR Plan Approval
  - Notice

**Plan Implementation**

- **EBR**
  - 7-Day Notice
  - Submit Draft Plan to MNR

- **EBR**
  - 7-Day Notice
  - Final List of Required Alterations

**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY
after the planning team has completed the necessary preparatory work to enable the
commencement of formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) to advise the public that the preparation of the forest management plan for the
management unit is beginning;
(b) to provide access to information to be used in the forest management planning
process;
(c) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning;
(d) to request the public's views on the desired forest for the management unit, and
desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the
management of forest cover; and
(e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the
planning team, plan author and local citizens committee.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section
3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter of the forest management plan (i.e., the long-
term management direction for the forest; the details of access, harvest,
renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term; and the proposed
areas of operations for the second five-year term);
(b) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the
planning process;
(c) a statement that further information about the forest management planning
process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the plan,
is available for the period of plan preparation;
(d) a statement that requests the public to provide additional background
information, or to state issues or concerns which need to be addressed during
the planning process, to the plan author, the MNR District Manager and/or the
local citizens committee; and
(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning
process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District
Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process
described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available in a display at the appropriate MNR
district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice
is issued:
1. (a) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
2. (b) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies (if any), and MNR (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;
3. (c) the current version of the values maps for the management unit, including the resource-based tourism values map;
4. (d) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the values maps or otherwise available in the data base; identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;
5. (e) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;
6. (f) the Planning Inventory for the management unit;
7. (g) a list of the sources of the information used to update the Planning Inventory;
8. (h) FMP-1 and FMP-2;
9. (i) a map of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the responsibility assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;
10. (j) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;
11. (k) the year seven management unit annual report for the current forest management plan and the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years;
12. (l) a copy of the current forest management plan for the management unit, and copies of all annual work schedules with respect to that current plan which have been prepared to date;
13. (m) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and a copy of each of those audits or reports;
14. (n) audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management and State of the Forest Report) and a copy of each of those audits or reports;
15. (o) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.7.1), and any other relevant information available with respect to existing management objectives for non-timber values in the geographical area of the management unit;
16. (p) a list of MNRR's forest management guides which are applicable to the management unit, and a copy of each of those guides;
17. (q) the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report for the current approved forest management plan;
18. (r) copies of MNRR's brochure on forest management planning; and
19. (s) a comment form.
3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to review the proposed long-term management direction for the forest. A display of information and maps will be available for public review and comment at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the material. A summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on:
   (i) the proposed long-term management direction for the forest;
   (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the preferred areas for harvest operations, during the ten-year period of the plan;
   (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years; and

(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review (i.e., the long-term management direction for the forest);  
(b) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
   (i) a summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest; and
   (ii) a summary map(s) of:
       • the preferred and optional areas for harvest operations during the ten-year period of the plan; and
       • the alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;

(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);

(d) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee; and

(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).
Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage One of public consultation, the following information and maps will also be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

(a) the draft Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
(b) any public comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
(c) a summary of the long-term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2.8);
(d) the analysis package;
(e) FMP-3 through FMP-13;
(f) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period of the plan;
(g) preferred and optional areas maps which portray:
   (i) the preferred and optional areas for harvest operations during the ten-year period of the plan; and
   (ii) alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
(h) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the alternative corridors for each new primary road;
(i) a summary map(s) of:
   (i) the preferred and optional areas for harvest, during the ten-year period of the plan;
   (ii) alternative one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are required for the next 20 years; and
   (iii) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan and the previous ten years;
(j) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;
(k) a summary report of the activities of the local citizens committee to date; and
(l) a comment form.

3.3.3.3 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage Three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.
The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on:
   (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the
       first five-year term of the plan, and the preferred areas for harvest,
       renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the
       plan;
   (ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and
        branch road for the ten-year period of the plan; and
   (iii) the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations, and proposed
        road locations/conditions, for the first five-year term of the plan; and

(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section
3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e.,
    the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-
    year term; and the proposed areas of operations for the second five-year term);

(b) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) of the information centre(s);

(c) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the information
    centre:
       (i) a summary of the MNR Regional Director endorsed long-term
           management direction for the forest; and
       (ii) a summary map(s) of:
           • the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for
             the first five-year term of the plan;
           • the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for
             the second five-year term of the plan;
           • the optional areas for harvest operations; and
           • the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and
             branch road which is required for the ten-year period of the plan;

(d) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre
    will also be available for review, for a 60-day period after the information
    centre;

(e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day
    public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific
    date will be provided);

(f) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of
    recommendations from the local citizens committee;

(g) the projected date for draft plan submission; and

(h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning
    process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage Two of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
(b) any public comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
(c) a summary of the MNR Regional Director endorsed long-term management direction;
(d) the proposed silvicultural ground rules;
(e) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan; the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the plan; the optional areas for harvest operations; the proposed surplus harvest areas (if any); areas of bridging operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas;
(f) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary and branch road which is required for the ten-year period of the plan;
(g) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan:
   (i) the proposed 100 metre wide location for each area of concern crossing within the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and branch road;
   (ii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of operational road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
   (iii) the proposed areas where silvicultural treatments of special public interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) are likely to occur; and
   (iv) the proposed operational prescriptions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;
(h) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads which will be constructed, maintained, monitored or abandoned during the period of the plan;
(i) FMP-14 through FMP-25;
(j) the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3); and
(k) a summary map(s) of:
   (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan;
(ii) the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the plan;
(iii) the optional areas for harvest operations;
(iv) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for primary roads which are required for the next 20 years;
(v) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
(vi) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan and the previous ten years; and

(l) a comment form.

At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information centre, MNR will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values map(s).

The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

3.3.3.4 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

Stage Four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held after the MNR review of the draft forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft forest management plan and MNR’s preliminary list of required alterations. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft forest management plan.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the draft forest management plan and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations will be available at the information centre;
(b) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) of the information centre(s);
(c) a statement that indicates the other location(s), date(s) and time(s) that the draft forest management plan can be reviewed after the scheduled information
centre(s) has been held, including the appropriate MNR regional office and a
location in Toronto provided by MNR;
(d) a statement that the draft forest management plan summary may be obtained at
the information centre, or from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and
the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day
public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific
date will be provided);
(f) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of
recommendations from the local citizens committee;
(g) the projected date for MNR approval of the plan; and
(h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning
process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or the
MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A,
Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at
Stage Three of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at
the information centre:

(a) the draft forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the draft forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.4.5), which
includes a summary map(s) of:
(i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the
first five-year term of the plan, and the preferred areas for harvest,
renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the
plan; and
(ii) the planned one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch
roads for the ten-year period of the plan;
(c) MNR's preliminary list of required alterations;
(d) the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section
4.6.3);  
(e) if applicable, a map of areas of the management unit which have been
identified as eligible for insect pest management, as a result of application of
the planning process for insect pest management programs for major insect
pest infestations (Part D, Section 6.0); and
(f) a comment form.

The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the
local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately
identified.

The information and maps will also be available for public review at the appropriate MNR
district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business
hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a
location in Toronto provided by MNR.

Final List of Required Alterations

As described in Part A, Section 1.5.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft
forest management plan, the MNR District Manager will consider the comments that were
received and produce a final list of required alterations. MNR's final list of required
alterations will be provided to any person who has requested a change to the draft forest
management plan, and any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which
a requested change has been addressed. When the final list of required alterations is provided
to those persons, it will be accompanied by notification which specifies that any person may
request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR
Regional Director, in accordance with steps 10 to 12 of the issue resolution process described
in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

3.3.3.5 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

Stage Five of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public
to inspect the MNR-approved forest management plan. This notice will be issued upon
approval of the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the forest
management plan has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an
opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved forest management plan.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section
3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) where the MNR-approved forest
management plan can be inspected, including the appropriate MNR regional
office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;

(b) a statement that the forest management plan summary may be obtained from
the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable
forest licensee; and

(c) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any
person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an
individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management
activities in the forest management plan, and that a response to the request will
normally be provided by the Minister of the Environment after the completion
of the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in
Part A, Section 3.4.2).
Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by the MNR:

(a) the MNR-approved forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
   (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan, and the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the plan; and
   (ii) the planned one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
(c) a list of the major changes to the draft forest management plan.

3.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

After public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan, a copy of the approved forest management plan will be available for public viewing for the ten-year period of the forest management plan at each of the following locations:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

3.3.4 Phase II Consultation

Phase II planning involves the detailed planning of operations for the second five-year term of the forest management plan. Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at three stages in Phase II planning. Figure A-13 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the planned operations for the second five-year term.
3.3.4.1 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the second five-year term. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the second five-year term, including:
   (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
   (ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and branch road for the second five-year term, and proposed road locations/conditions; and
   (iii) the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations; and

(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:
(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e.,
the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second
five-year term);  
(b) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) of the information centre(s);  
(c) a statement that a summary map may be obtained at the information centre,
which portrays:  
(i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the
second five-year term; and
(ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and
branch road which is required for the second five-year term;  
(d) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre
will also be available for review for a 30-day period after the information
centre;  
(e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day
public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific
date will be provided);  
(f) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of
recommendations from the local citizens committee;  
(g) the projected date for submission of the draft planned operations for the second
five-year term; and
(h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning
process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District
Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process
described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) the current version of the following information for the management unit:
   (i) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for
identification of the location of the management unit;
   (ii) a description of the management responsibilities for the management
unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest
companies (if any), and MNR (if any)), and a description of the forest
industry which is supplied from the management unit;
   (iii) the values maps for the management unit, including the resource-based
tourism values maps;
   (iv) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the
values maps or otherwise available in the data base; identification of the
methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those
subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;
   (v) the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A,
Section 4.6.1);
(vi) a list of MNR’s forest management guides which are applicable to the management unit, and a copy of each of those guides; and

(vii) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and a copy of each of those audits or reports;

(b) a copy of the current approved forest management plan for the management unit, including the supplementary documentation, and the forest management plan summary;

(c) copies of all annual work schedules with respect to the current approved forest management plan which have been prepared to date;

(d) the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan, or Report of Past Forest Operations, whichever is applicable;

(e) the year three management unit annual report for the current approved forest management plan;

(f) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term; the optional areas for harvest operations (previously identified in Phase I planning); the proposed surplus harvest areas (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas. For the proposed areas of operations, any changes to the areas which were previously proposed for the second five-year term in Phase I planning will be clearly identified;

(g) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary and branch road which is required for the second five-year term;

(h) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term:

(i) the proposed 100 metre wide location for each area of concern crossing within the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and branch road;

(ii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of operational road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;

(iii) the proposed areas where silvicultural treatments of special public interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) are likely to occur; and

(iv) the proposed operational prescriptions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required, the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;

(i) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads which will be constructed, maintained, monitored or abandoned during the second five-year term;

(j) updated versions of FMP-14 through FMP-25;

(k) the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3);

(l) a summary map(s) of:

(i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term;
the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for primary roads which are required for the next 15 years;

(iii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term; and

(iv) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan and the previous ten years;

(m) audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management and State of the Forest Report) and a copy of each of those audits or reports;

(n) copies of MNR's brochure on forest management planning; and

(o) a comment form.

At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information centre, MNR will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values map(s).

The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

3.3.4.2 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to review the draft planned operations for the second five-year term. This public review, for a period of 30 days, will follow the MNR review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft planned operations for the second five-year term and MNR’s preliminary list of required alterations. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft planned operations.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that indicates the location(s), date(s) and time(s) where the draft planned operations for the second five-year term and MNR’s preliminary list of required alterations can be reviewed, including the appropriate MNR regional office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;
(b) a statement that the draft planned operations summary for the second five-year term may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(d) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee;
(e) the projected date for MNR approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term; and
(f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:

(a) the current forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, including the supplementary documentation;
(c) the draft planned operations summary for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.3.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
   (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term, and the optional areas for harvest operations; and
   (ii) the planned one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term;
(d) MNR's preliminary list of required alterations;
(e) the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3);
(f) if applicable, a map of areas of the management unit which have been identified as eligible for insect pest management, as a result of application of the planning process for insect pest management programs for major insect pest infestations (Part D, Section 6.0); and
(g) a comment form.

This information will also be available for public review at the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR.
Final List of Required Alterations

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations. MNR's final list of required alterations will be provided to any person who has requested a change to the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, and any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed. When the final list of required alterations is provided to those persons, it will be accompanied by notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with steps 10 to 12 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

3.3.4.3 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

Stage Three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term. This notice will be issued upon approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term by the MNR Regional Director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the operations for the second five-year term have been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved planned operations.

Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

(a) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) where the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term can be inspected, including the appropriate MNR regional office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;

(b) a statement that the planned operations summary for the second five-year term may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee; and

(c) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the planned operations for the second five-year term, and that a response to the request will normally be provided by the Minister of the Environment after the completion of the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2).
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR:

(a) the current forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term, including the supplementary documentation;
(c) the planned operations summary for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.3.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
   (i) the approved areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term; and
   (ii) the approved one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term; and
(d) a list of the major changes to the draft planned operations for the second five-year term.

3.3.4.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations

After public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations, a copy of the approved planned operations will be available for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the same locations as the approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.3.6).

3.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

3.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

During the preparation of a forest management plan, a concerned person(s) may identify an issue for specific attention. If an issue is identified early in the planning process, the plan author and planning team may attempt to address the issue informally with the concerned person(s). Often, these informal discussions can resolve the issue. However, if discussions between the plan author, the planning team and the concerned person(s) do not lead to a remedy within a reasonable amount of time, the plan author will advise the concerned person(s) that the formal issue resolution process is available to address the issue. The plan author will advise the concerned person(s) to make a written submission requesting issue resolution, and include a description of the issue and, preferably, a proposed solution.

During the preparation and review of a forest management plan for the ten-year period (Phase I), if a request for issue resolution is received prior to the draft forest management plan being available for public review, the request will progress through a series of stages, if required,
starting with the plan author. If there is no satisfactory resolution of the issue with the plan
author, the process will proceed to the MNR District Manager, and if required, the MNR
Regional Director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft
forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to
the MNR District Manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day period
for public review of the draft forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the
request for issue resolution to the MNR Regional Director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR Regional Director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 30 days after the completion of the period for public review of the

During the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), if a request for
issue resolution is received prior to the draft planned operations being available for public
review, the request will progress through a series of stages, if required, starting with the plan
author. If there is no satisfactory resolution of the issue with the plan author, the process will
proceed to the MNR District Manager, and if required, the MNR Regional Director. If a
request is received during the period for public review of the draft planned operations, the
concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR District Manager.
If a request is received after the completion of the 30-day period for public review of the draft
planned operations, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the
MNR Regional Director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 30 days
after the completion of the period for public review of the draft planned operations.

If a concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process, there
is an opportunity to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an
individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities, as
described in Part A, Section 3.4.2.

Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned
person(s), the plan author, and where applicable, the MNR District Manager and the MNR
Regional Director, with opportunities for the involvement of the local citizens committee. For
each issue, documentation will be produced for each step in the issue resolution process, and
the rationale for the decision will be provided, to demonstrate how the issue was addressed
and resolved. The documentation will be included in the supplementary documentation of the
forest management plan.

Figure A-14 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the
opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment for Phase I.

Figure A-15 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the
opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment for Phase II.
Figure A-14: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase I Planning

**PHASE I: Preparing the Ten-year Forest Management Plan**

- **Stage One**: Invitation to Participate
- **Stage Two**: Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction
- **Stage Three**: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
- **Stage Four**: Inspection of MNR Approved Plan

All stages of Issue Resolution apply.
For any new request for Issue Resolution, process begins with the Plan Author.

For any new request for Issue Resolution, process begins with the MNR District Manager.

For any new request for Issue Resolution, process begins with the MNR Regional Director.

***NOTE:*** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY
Figure A-15: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase II Planning

**PHASE II: Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term**

**In Year 5**

- **Stage One**: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
- **Stage Two**: Review of Draft Planned Operations
- **Stage Three**: Inspection of MNRF Approved Planned Operations

**Schedule**:
- Feb: Initial Review
- Apr: Final Review
- Jun: Approval
- Aug: Implementation
- Oct: Final Review
- Dec: Approval
- Feb: Implementation

**Note**:
- All stages of Issue Resolution apply for any new request for Issue Resolution, process begins with the Plan Author.
- For any new request for Issue Resolution, process begins with the MNRF District Manager.
- For any new request for Issue Resolution, process begins with the MNRF Regional Director.

***NOTE: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY***
Plan Author Stage

The plan author stage applies to a request that is received prior to the public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or a request that is received prior to the public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1 Request</th>
<th>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the plan author, and include a description of the issue and, preferably, a proposed solution.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2 Meeting</td>
<td>The plan author will contact the concerned person(s), normally within 15 days, to arrange a meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve, the issue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3 Issue resolved</td>
<td>If discussions produce a resolution, the plan author will seek the agreement of the planning team, and provide a written response to the concerned person(s) which documents resolution of the issue. The resolution of the issue will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4 Issue not resolved</td>
<td>If discussions do not produce a resolution, the plan author will communicate the issue in writing to the MNR District Manager and the local citizens committee. [Go to Step 5.]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MNR District Manager Stage

The MNR District Manager stage applies to an issue that is not resolved during the plan author stage. The MNR District Manager stage also applies to a request that is received during the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or a request that is received during the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

| Step 5 Request | For an issue that is not resolved during the plan author stage, the MNR District Manager will receive notification of the issue in writing from the plan author. For a request that is received during the public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or during the public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), the concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNR District Manager, and include a description of the issue and, preferably, a proposed solution. |

### Step 6 Meeting

Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNR District Manager will arrange and attend a meeting of the plan author, the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, and one or more members of the local citizens committee, in order to seek resolution of the issue. If it is helpful, the MNR District Manager may arrange a site visit.

If the concerned person(s) cannot be contacted or has not responded, the MNR District Manager will send a letter to the concerned person(s) to provide an additional 15 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter) in order to attempt to arrange and hold a meeting with the concerned person(s).

### Step 7 Issue resolved

If a meeting resulted in resolution of the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

### Step 8 No meeting or Issue not resolved

If there was no meeting because the concerned person(s) was not available, or a meeting resulted in no resolution of the issue, the MNR District Manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s) and the local citizens committee, to recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNR District Manager.

### Step 9 District Manager Decision

The MNR District Manager will consider the results of the meeting and the submissions, and produce a written decision on the issue, with reasons, normally within 15 days of the meeting or receipt of the written submissions.

At the latest, the MNR District Manager’s decision will be made within 15 days after the public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or the public review of the draft planned operations (Phase II), in order to reflect the decision in the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.5.2 and 2.3.2).

The MNR District Manager will provide a copy of the written decision to the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local citizens committee and the MNR Regional Director.

The MNR District Manager’s written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the MNR Regional Director within 30 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter).

### MNR Regional Director Stage

The MNR Regional Director stage applies if a concerned person(s) requests a review of the MNR District Manager’s decision.
The MNR Regional Director stage also applies to a request that is received during the 30
days following the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest
management plan (Phase I), or a request that is received during the 30 days following the
completion of the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned operations for the
second five-year term (Phase II).

| Step 10 Request | The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNR
Regional Director, and include a description of the issue, preferably a
proposed solution, and possible dates (within the next 15 days) and locations
when he/she would be available for a meeting.

Upon receipt of the submission, any other persons known to be directly
affected by the issue will be notified by the MNR District Manager that a
formal review of a specific decision in the draft forest management plan
(Phase I), or the draft planned operations (Phase II), has been requested. |

| Step 11 Meeting | Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the
MNR Regional Director will arrange and attend a meeting of the plan author,
the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by
the issue, and one or more members of the local citizens committee, in order to
seek resolution of the issue.

If there was no meeting because the concerned person(s) could not be
contacted within the 15 days, or was not available to meet, the MNR Regional
Director will solicit the views and comments from the concerned person(s),
any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author,
the local citizens committee, and the MNR District Manager, to assist in
making a decision. |

| Step 12 Regional Director Decision | The MNR Regional Director will consider the results of the meeting and the
written submissions, and produce a written decision on the issue, with reasons,
normally within 15 days of the meeting, or within 30 days of receipt of the
request for issue resolution. The MNR Regional Director will provide a copy
of the written decision, with reasons, to the concerned person(s), any other
person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local
citizens committee and the MNR District Manager.

The MNR Regional Director’s decision will include a statement that if the
concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the MNR Regional Director’s
decision, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the Minister of
the Environment during the period for public inspection of the MNR-approved
plan (Phase I), or the MNR-approved planned operations (Phase II), for an
individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management
activities in the forest management plan (Phase I) or the planned operations
(Phase II). |
3.4.2 Process for Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

Any person may make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment under the *Environmental Assessment Act* of specific proposed forest management activities in a forest management plan. A request is normally made when a concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process.

The process for a request for an individual environmental assessment applies in the preparation of the ten-year forest management plan (Phase I) and the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II). For Phase I, the timeframe in which a request can be made is the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan. For Phase II, the timeframe in which a request can be made is the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNR-approved operations for the second five-year term.

For any request for an individual environmental assessment, the following process will apply:

1. At the commencement of public inspection of an MNR-approved forest management plan for the ten-year period, and at the commencement of public inspection of the MNR-approved operations for the second five-year term, there shall be a 30-day period for any person(s) to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the plan.

2. The Minister of the Environment shall notify the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to the Minister of the Environment on the request.

3. The Minister of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 45 days of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch may require MNR to submit additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

4. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request within 45 days of receipt of all necessary information, the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe for a decision, to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person(s) requesting an individual environmental assessment.

5. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.
6. The Minister of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Minister does not require an individual environmental assessment, the Minister shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person(s) requesting the individual environmental assessment that the request has been denied, with reasons.

7. If the Minister of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment, the Minister of the Environment shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person(s) requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval under the *Environmental Assessment Act*. The specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are the subject of the individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Minister of the Environment. Where the Minister of the Environment has given written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are not the subject of the individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch.
4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

4.1 Introduction

For the purposes of this section, the reference to an Aboriginal community means an Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

This section describes the requirements for the involvement of Aboriginal communities, and consideration of their interests, in forest management planning.

This section describes the requirements to develop a consultation approach with each Aboriginal community. This section also describes consultation efforts that will be required if a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.

The MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community at least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the forest management plan to discuss the opportunities to be involved in the planning and implementation of the forest management plan.

The consideration of Aboriginal interests through the involvement of Aboriginal communities in forest management planning as described in this section is intended, in part, to assist the Crown in addressing obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the Constitution Act, 1982.

4.2 Planning Team

When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to offer an opportunity for a representative of the community to participate on the planning team.

The Aboriginal member(s) of the planning team will be reimbursed by the MNR for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and will be provided a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings.

If an Aboriginal community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4, the approach may describe how the community will interact with the planning team.
4.3 Local Citizens Committee

When reviewing the membership of the local citizens committee (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the MNR District Manager will invite each Aboriginal community to nominate a representative, and will consider the nominations when appointing a member or members to the local citizens committee.

4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

A consultation approach will describe the involvement of the Aboriginal community, and the consideration of the community’s interests, in the production and implementation of the forest management plan, and will provide a process for exchanging necessary information in a timely manner.

The MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community at least 6 months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the forest management plan to invite the community to discuss the development of a consultation approach for forest management planning with the community (Part A, Section 1.1.8). The MNR District Manager will make ongoing reasonable efforts to engage each Aboriginal community in the development of an agreed upon consultation approach.

If a consultation approach is prepared, it will be developed jointly by representatives of the community, MNR representatives and the plan author. In the development of the approach, the Aboriginal community may choose to co-ordinate efforts with other Aboriginal communities, or seek advice from the applicable treaty organization. If the MNR District Manager and the Aboriginal community agree, an existing approach for consultation may be considered in the development of the consultation approach.

Normally, the consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and MNR prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a forest management plan (Phase I, Stage One). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of Stage One, the requirements described in Part A, Section 4.5 will apply until an agreed upon approach is developed.

The consultation approach for each community will normally address the community’s involvement in the production of the forest management plan, the planning of operations for the second five-year term, contingency plans, amendments to forest management plans and contingency plans, annual work schedules and insect pest management programs. In the development of the consultation approach, the information and timing requirements of the formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that the schedule for plan production and implementation is maintained.

The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices, consultation forums, information availability, written responses to comments and submissions, and
opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the local citizens committee. The consultation approach will normally also address:

(a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;
(b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;
(c) specific information or summaries which require translation;
(d) contents and formats of notices;
(e) identification of local publications in the Aboriginal media which are used by the community;
(f) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as community meetings or special information centres;
(g) involvement in the preparation and update of the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1), including the Aboriginal values map, and conditions on the public availability of Aboriginal values information;
(h) method and timing for review and comment on the Aboriginal Background Information Report;
(i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect Aboriginal values;
(j) involvement in the preparation and update of the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3);
(k) method and timing for review and comment on the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values; and
(l) the update of the consultation approach prior to the planning of operations for the second five-year term.

If MNR and the Aboriginal community agree, changes to the consultation approach may be made during the production and implementation of the forest management plan.

Before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to confirm the continued use of the consultation approach developed with the community. In those circumstances where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been developed, the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to invite the community to discuss the development of a consultation approach with the community. The MNR planning team member(s) assigned the role of Aboriginal liaison will follow-up with each Aboriginal community within 15 days to confirm the approach or discuss changes to the approach, or to develop an approach.

If an agreed upon consultation approach is developed, the consultation approach will apply during the production and implementation of the forest management plan. If an agreed upon consultation approach has been developed, but the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the following requirements will apply:

(a) Part A, Section 4.5, for forest management plans;
(b) Part C, Section 6.0, for amendments to forest management plans and contingency plans, and contingency plans; and
(c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.
4.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Consultation Approach

If a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community is not agreed upon in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, or if an agreed upon consultation approach has been developed, but the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

For each notice required for a forest management plan and the planning of operations for the second-five year term, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

If a public information centre is scheduled, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.

4.5.1 Forest Management Plans

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

4.5.1.1 Phase I Consultation

Stage One – Invitation to Participate

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.1, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) an invitation to participate in the review and update of the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1), and the community demographic profile (Part A, Section 4.6.2); and

(b) a request to advise MNR how the community wishes to participate in the review and update of the report.

Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.2, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:
(a) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on
the draft Aboriginal Background Information Report and the community
demographic profile, within a 30-day review period (to advise the community
when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(b) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest management operations to
address identified Aboriginal values; and
(c) a request to advise MNR how the community wishes to participate in the
planning of forest management operations to address identified Aboriginal
values.

Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.3, and
modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal
community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the Aboriginal Background Information Report and the
community demographic profile;
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on
the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A,
Section 4.6.3) within a 60-day review period (to advise the community when
comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and
(c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the
Aboriginal community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to
remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, and
modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal
community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal
Values;
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on
the draft forest management plan within a 60-day review period (to advise the
community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and
(c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the
Aboriginal community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to
remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.
Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community.

4.5.1.2 Phase II Consultation

At the commencement of the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to invite their participation in the review and update of the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report and the Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values.

Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.1, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report;

(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the updated Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values within a 30-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and

(c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the Aboriginal community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values; and

(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to provide comments on the draft planned operations within a 30-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided).
Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community.

4.6 Documentation

During the preparation of a forest management plan, a number of documents related to Aboriginal involvement will be prepared. These documents include an Aboriginal Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values and a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement. MNR shall seek advice from each Aboriginal community regarding the public availability of Aboriginal values information in those documents.

4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report

MNR and representatives of participating Aboriginal communities will review and update the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report, or Native Background Information Report, if applicable, for the current approved forest management plan, to produce an Aboriginal Background Information Report as part of the management unit description (Part B, Section 2.6). The existing Aboriginal Background Information Report, or Native Background Information Report, if applicable, will be available at the commencement of formal public consultation (Phase I, Stage One) and a draft Aboriginal Background Information Report will be available at the time of public review of the proposed long-term management direction (Phase I, Stage Two).

The Aboriginal Background Information Report summarizes, for each Aboriginal community, past and current resource use and recent forest management-related concerns, and includes an Aboriginal values map. Specifically, the report will contain:

(a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit by Aboriginal communities, in particular hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering;
(b) forest management-related problems and issues for those Aboriginal communities;
(c) an Aboriginal values map which identifies the locations* of natural resource features, land uses and values which are used by, or of importance to, those Aboriginal communities. In particular, the following features, land uses and values will be mapped:
   (i) areas of significance to local Aboriginal communities, such as areas used for traditional or recreational activities;
   (ii) boundaries of trapline management areas of those Aboriginal communities (i.e., all registered trapline areas associated with individual Aboriginal communities);
   (iii) Reserves and Aboriginal communities;
*Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information would not normally be shown on the Aboriginal values map(s).*

The report will be updated for use in the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.1.2.3).

### 4.6.2 Social and Economic Description

The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will include a demographic profile for each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10). The MNR planning team representative, who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will contact each Aboriginal community to invite the community to provide, verify and update information in the community demographic profile.

### 4.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values

In the planning of operations in the forest management plan, the planning team, with the support of MNR, will produce a Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values. The Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values documents how Aboriginal interests, including values identified in the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) which are affected by the proposed operations, have been addressed.

In the preparation of the forest management plan, a preliminary report will be available at the time of public review of the proposed operations for the first five-year term (Phase I, Stage Three), and will include:

- a summary of proposed operations, and a discussion of proposed primary and branch road corridors of interest to the Aboriginal community;
- the most current version of the values map(s) and the Aboriginal values map;
- a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of concern associated with identified Aboriginal values;
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

1. (d) a discussion of how local Aboriginal hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering activities have been addressed in the planning of forest operations; and
2. (e) a comment sheet, and the names of an Aboriginal community contact person and an MNR contact person.

The final report will be available at the time of public review of the draft Forest Management Plan (Phase I, Stage Four), and will include:

1. (a) the draft Forest Management Plan Summary;
2. (b) the updated current version of the values map(s) and the updated Aboriginal values map;
3. (c) a discussion of proposed primary branch road corridors of interest to the Aboriginal community;
4. (d) a discussion of the updated operational prescriptions for specific areas of concern associated with identified Aboriginal values; and
5. (e) an updated discussion of how local Aboriginal hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering activities have been addressed in the planning of forest operations.

In the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the report will be updated to address the proposed operations for the second five-year term. The updated Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be prepared and reviewed in accordance with the agreed upon consultation approach developed for each Aboriginal community.

During the preparation of an amendment to a forest management plan (Part C, Section 1.0), the Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be updated, if proposed forest operations in the amendment potentially affect Aboriginal interests.

For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part C, Section 2.2).

4.6.4 Summary of Aboriginal Involvement

A Summary of Aboriginal Involvement in the production of the forest management plan will be prepared by the MNR planning team member assigned the role of Aboriginal liaison. The summary will include:

1. (a) a list of the Aboriginal communities, and the primary contact person for each community;
2. (b) a list of the communities’ representatives on the planning team and local citizens committee;
3. (c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;
4. (d) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;
5. (e) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and planning team responses;
a summary of participation at public information centres and special information centres for the community; and
a summary of the implementation of the consultation approach for each Aboriginal community, where applicable.

For the production of the forest management plan, a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft forest management plan, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved forest management plan. For the planning of operations for the second five-year term, a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft planned operations, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved operations.

A Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be prepared for Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of a minor and major amendment to a forest management plan or a contingency plan (Part C, Sections 6.2 and 6.3), a contingency plan (Part C, Section 6.4), and annual operations (Part D, Section 8.0).
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Forest Description</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1</td>
<td>Geology, Soils and Sites</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2</td>
<td>Historic Forest</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.3</td>
<td>Planning Inventory</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.4</td>
<td>Fish and Wildlife Resources</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.5</td>
<td>Other Forest Resources</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.6</td>
<td>Landscape Pattern</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Existing Roads</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Land Use Description</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Social and Economic Description</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.1</td>
<td>Overview of Social and Economic Context</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.2</td>
<td>Summary of Demographic Profiles</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5.3</td>
<td>Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Aboriginal Background Information Report</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Values Maps</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Current Forest Condition</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1</td>
<td>Forest Units</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2</td>
<td>Habitat</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3</td>
<td>Forest Landscape Pattern</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4</td>
<td>Other Forest Classifications</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Silvicultural Ground Rules</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Management Considerations</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Desired Forest and Benefits</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Objectives and Indicators</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Management Strategy</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>Available Harvest Area</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>Selection of Areas for Operations</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10</td>
<td>Assessment of Objective Achievement</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>Social and Economic Assessment</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>PLANNED OPERATIONS</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Prescriptions for Operations</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.1</td>
<td>Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2.2</td>
<td>Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Harvest Operations</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.1</td>
<td>Harvest Areas</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.2</td>
<td>Surplus Harvest Area</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

June 2004
Forest Management Planning Manual
B-1
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

1  4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan .......................27
2  4.3.4 Planned Clearcuts ..................................................................................................27
3  4.3.5 Harvest Volume ....................................................................................................27
4  4.3.6 Wood Utilization ..................................................................................................28
5  4.3.7 Salvage ..................................................................................................................28
6  4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume .............................................................................29
7  4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations .............................................................................29
8  4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas .................................................................................29
9  4.4.2 Renewal Support ....................................................................................................29
10  4.5 Roads .....................................................................................................................30
11  4.5.1 Roads and Road Corridors .................................................................................30
12  4.5.2 Roads and Areas of Concern .............................................................................31
13  4.6 Revenues and Expenditures ..................................................................................31
14  4.7 Monitoring and Assessment ..................................................................................32
15  4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections ..........................................................................32
16  4.7.2 Exceptions ...........................................................................................................33
17  4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success .................................................................33
18  4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings ..............................................................................33
19  4.8 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction ...33
20  5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY ................................................................35
21  6.0 DOCUMENTATION ...............................................................................................36
22  6.1 Supplementary Documentation ...........................................................................36
23  6.2 Other Documentation ...........................................................................................38
24  7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY .........................................................39
25  8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..................40
26  8.1 Introduction ............................................................................................................40
27  8.2 Prescriptions for Operations ................................................................................45
28  8.3 Harvest Operations ................................................................................................45
29  8.4 Renewal and Tending Operations .......................................................................46
30  8.5 Roads .....................................................................................................................46
31  8.6 Revenues and Expenditures ................................................................................46
32  8.7 Monitoring and Assessment ................................................................................47
33  8.8 Supplementary Documentation ............................................................................47
34  8.9 Planned Operations Summary .............................................................................48
35  9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ................................................................49
LIST OF TABLES

1. FMP-1: Management Unit Land Summary ................................................................. 50
2. FMP-2: Summary of Crown Productive Forest by Provincial Forest Type .................. 52
3. FMP-3: Description of Forest Units ........................................................................... 54
4. FMP-4: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit .................... 56
5. FMP-5: Silvicultural Ground Rules ............................................................................. 58
6. FMP-6: Summary of Management Objectives ........................................................... 60
7. FMP-7: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest ....................... 62
8. FMP-8: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species ............................................ 64
9. FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit ......................................... 66
10. FMP-10: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group .............................. 68
11. FMP-11: Projected Operations, Revenues and Expenditures ................................... 70
12. FMP-12: Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances ......................................... 72
13. FMP-13: Assessment of Objective Achievement ...................................................... 74
14. FMP-14: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ....................................... 76
15. FMP-15: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Harvest Area .............................. 78
16. FMP-16: Planned Clearcuts (5-year) ....................................................................... 80
17. FMP-17: Forecast of Harvest Volume by Species (10-year) ....................................... 82
18. FMP-18: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year) ........................... 84
19. FMP-19: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Wood Utilization by Mill ............ 86
20. FMP-20: Contingency Area: Harvest Area and Volume .......................................... 88
21. FMP-21: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations .... 90
22. FMP-22: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Road Construction and Use Management .......................................................... 92
23. FMP-23: Road Crossings of Areas of Concern ......................................................... 94
24. FMP-24: Forecast of Revenues and Expenditures (10-year) ...................................... 96
25. FMP-25: Forecast of Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year) ....................... 98

LIST OF FIGURES

33. Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page .......... 5
34. Figure B-1B: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page ......................... 6
35. Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions ......................................... 7
36. Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors .................................................. 8
37. Figure B-4: Index to Environmental Assessment Components of the Forest Management Plan .................................................................................................................. 9
38. Figure B-5A: Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page ...... 41
39. Figure B-5B: Phase II Planned Operations - Title and Certification Page .................... 42
40. Figure B-6: Phase II Planned Operations - List of Exceptions ...................................... 43
41. Figure B-7: Phase II Planned Operations Contributors ............................................. 44
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

All forest management plans scheduled for renewal and implementation commencing April 1, 2007 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A and Part B of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Part B of this manual prescribes the plan content requirements for a forest management plan in Ontario. This part will act as a template for writing the forest management plan. A forest management plan is comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. Forest management plans must contain page numbers and line numbers.

During the preparation, review and approval of the forest management plan (Phase I), the documentation requirements of Part B will apply, with the exception of Section 8.0. During the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), the documentation requirements of Part B, Section 8.0 will apply.

PLAN CERTIFICATION AND APPROVAL PAGE

The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-1A) will be located at the front of each draft and approved forest management plan.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final forest management plan. For plans prepared by an organization other than MNR, the senior company official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The approved forest management plan must also be signed by the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of a forest management plan, those people will certify the parts of the plan that they prepared, and that they have prepared those parts of the plan in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B.

A list of exceptions (Figure B-2) will follow the title and certification page.

The list of forest management plan contributors (Figure B-3) will follow the list of exceptions.
Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

I hereby certify that I have prepared this forest management plan, including the Silvicultural Ground Rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

_____________________________ ____________________
[R.P.F. seal]   [Plan Author]*    [date]

Submitted by:   ______________________________ ____________________
(where applicable)  [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]  [date]

I recommend that this forest management plan be approved for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that the forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this forest management plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

____________________________________  ____________________
[MNR District Manager]    [date]

Approved by:

____________________________________  ____________________
[MNR Regional Director]    [date]

Figure B-1B: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page

For Sections of the Forest Management Plan not Prepared by the Plan Author

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the forest management plan as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
(NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, ______ to March 31, ______

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the forest management plan that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of Exception</th>
<th>Specific Section of Plan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, ______ to March 31, ______

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

____________________________________ __________________________________
Plan Author

____________________________________ __________________________________

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

_____________________________________ __________________________________

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE MEMBERS

____________________________________ __________________________________

A brief statement which reports on the local citizens committee's agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan:

____________________________________ __________________________________

____________________________________ __________________________________

____________________________________ __________________________________

PLAN REVIEWERS

____________________________________ __________________________________

____________________________________ __________________________________

____________________________________ __________________________________
The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. It will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

**INDEX TO THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT COMPONENTS OF THE FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

The index to the environmental assessment components of the forest management plan (Figure B-4) will be located in the forest management plan, on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents. The page numbers of the forest management plan that address each of the environmental assessment components will be listed in the third column.

**Figure B-4: Index to Environmental Assessment Components of the Forest Management Plan**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Assessment Component</th>
<th>Section of Forest Management Plan</th>
<th>Section Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Background Information            | Management Unit Description (Part B, Section 2.0)  
Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- forest management guides used  
- values map  
- information on other forest resources  
- Forest Resource Inventory update sources  
- Aboriginal Background Information Report  
- recommendations from year seven management unit annual report |                |
| Description of the Environment Affected | Management Unit Description (Part B, Section 2.0)  
Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3)  
Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4)  
Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)  
Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- forest management guides used  
- values map  
- information on other forest resources  
- Forest Resource Inventory update sources  
- Aboriginal Background Information Report  
- digital stand list |                |
| Description of the Selection of Operations and the Alternatives which were Considered | Long-Term Management Direction (Part B, Section 3.0)  
Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3)  
Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4)  
Prescriptions for Operations (Part B, Section 4.2)  
Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)  
Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- analysis package  
- road planning  
- area of concern planning  
- digital stand list |                |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental Assessment Component</th>
<th>Section of Forest Management Plan</th>
<th>Section Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Description of the Proposed Activities | Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3)  
Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4)  
Prescriptions for Operations (Part B, Section 4.2)  
Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)  
Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- road planning  
- area of concern planning  
- digital stand list | |
| Description of the Expected Effects on the Environment and Proposed Mitigation Measures | Long-Term Management Direction (Part B, Section 3.0)  
Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern (Part B, Section 4.2.1)  
Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)  
Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- road planning  
- area of concern planning | |
| Description of Proposed Monitoring | Silvicultural Ground Rules (Part B, Section 3.3)  
Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern (Part B, Section 4.2.1)  
Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)  
Monitoring and Assessment (Part B, Section 4.7)  
Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- monitoring programs  
- road planning  
- area of concern planning | |
| Description of Public Consultation and A Summary of the Results | Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):  
- public consultation summary  
- report of the local citizens committee  
- issues addressed  
- required alterations from draft plan review | |
| Any Other Environmental Assessment Matters | | |
1.0 INTRODUCTION

The introduction will describe the purpose of the plan and set the context for the plan locally, regionally and provincially.

The introduction will also contain a brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the SEV briefing note.
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION

2.1 Administration

The plan text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.1.1), the tenure arrangements of the forest company(ies) which operate on the management unit, and any management implications of these responsibilities and arrangements.

This section will also contain a management unit map, at a scale that will fit a standard page, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit. The map must identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and where applicable, the location of the sustainable forest licensee’s office. The date that the present management unit boundaries were established and a description of any boundary changes since the last plan was prepared will be in the plan text.

2.2 Forest Description

The plan text will describe the physical context within which forest management planning is carried out.

2.2.1 Geology, Soils and Sites

The plan text will describe the geology, soils and sites which occur on the management unit. This information may also be presented in map format.

The description of geology will include a discussion of the geological history and significant landforms on the management unit. The discussion of soils will address major soil types, in terms of their distribution and extent across the management unit. The description of sites will address major ecosites, in terms of their distribution and extent across the management unit, and describe the relevant site regions and site districts. A more detailed discussion of ecosites as they relate to silviculture is required in the silvicultural ground rules (Part B, Section 3.3).

A discussion of the implications of geology, soil and site conditions on the development of the forest management plan will be provided.

2.2.2 Historic Forest

The plan text will describe the forest types and conditions that occurred on the management unit in the past (Part A, Section 1.1.7.11), and will include the sources of information used to describe the historic forest. Factors which have resulted in changes in forest types (e.g., species, homogeneity of stands) will be discussed, including man’s use and management of the forest, and natural processes with an emphasis on fire disturbance. Specific topics such as
disturbance sizes and patterns, flora and fauna, historic forest diversity, forest age, forest productivity, wildlife habitat, and social and economic matters, will be discussed if information is available.

A discussion of the implications of the historic forest on the development of the forest management plan will be provided.

2.2.3 Planning Inventory

The plan text will describe the planning inventory in terms of land ownership and discuss the implications of land ownership (e.g., large areas of private land within the management unit) and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the development of the forest management plan. A summary of the land types by land ownership for the management unit will be provided in FMP-1, which summarizes the status of the land base at the beginning of the period of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5).

The plan text will describe the planning inventory in terms of provincial forest type and age class and discuss implications of the extent and distribution of provincial forest types and age classes on the development of the forest management plan. A summary of the Crown productive forest area on the management unit will be provided in FMP-2, by provincial forest type and age class. A separate table will be prepared for total Crown productive forest, managed Crown productive forest, and for other areas of Crown productive forest (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5).

The information in FMP-1 and FMP-2 will be summarized in graphs that clearly display the information from each table.

The plan text will contain a discussion of the information used to update the planning inventory, any assumptions used to predict the status of the inventory at the beginning of the plan period, and the reliability of those predictions. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the list of the sources of information used to update the planning inventory.

If the vintage of the forest stand information in the forest resource inventory will reach 20-years of age during the period of the forest management plan, the strategy for re-inventory of the productive forest area on licensed Crown lands within the management unit will be documented in the text. This strategy will identify the area by forest type that requires re-inventory within the next ten years and how the Sustainable Forest Licensee intends to carry out the re-inventory process for these areas.

2.2.4 Fish and Wildlife Resources

The plan text will describe the fish resources on the management unit, including a summary of available information on the occurrence of fish species and habitats (e.g., lake trout lakes,
brook trout streams) in district fisheries management plans, lake management plans and inventories (Part A, Section 1.1.7.6).

Provincially featured wildlife species (e.g., moose, deer, caribou, pine marten and pileated woodpecker) that occur on the management unit, and locally featured wildlife species will be identified, and a general description of their habitat requirements provided.

The contribution and importance of, the management unit in supporting the provincially and locally featured wildlife species, including species that are classified as special concern, threatened or endangered, will be described. Species for which the contribution to preferred habitat, on a regional basis, is lower than expected will be specifically identified. Where other resource management plans or inventories for these species provide information on the extent and quality of the habitat, and population status, relevant to the management unit, the information will be described.

The plan text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the development of the forest management plan.

2.2.5 Other Forest Resources

The plan text will describe the other forest resources on the management unit which are dependent on forest cover (Part A, Section 1.1.7.7), and which are significant in the local, regional or provincial context.

The plan text will contain a general description of special concern, threatened and endangered flora that is present on the management unit and their habitat.

The plan text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g., significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) which occur on the management unit.

A discussion of the implications of the other forest resources on the development of the forest management plan will be provided.

2.2.6 Landscape Pattern

The plan text will describe the current forest landscape patterns (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3) and discuss the implications the forest landscape patterns have on the development of the forest management plan.

The forest landscape patterns at the start of the plan are portrayed on the forest landscape patterns map, in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation containing the forest landscape patterns map.
2.3 Existing Roads

The plan text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.9). Existing roads and approved primary road corridors will be portrayed on the values maps in the supplementary documentation. Primary roads, and roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, will be differentiated. The maps will also identify roads with access controls. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the values maps.

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in the Existing Roads Table (Appendix II) in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the Existing Roads Table.

If a new or changed use management strategy was developed for an existing road or road network (Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.6), documentation of the use management strategy development (Appendix VII) will be provided in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains Appendix VII.

2.4 Land Use Description

The plan text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8) and their implications on the forest management plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the values maps of these land uses. The land uses include:

(a) resource-based tourism areas;
(b) mineral, aggregate and quarry areas;
(c) crown land recreation and cottaging;
(d) trapping (commercial fur); and
(e) private land.

The plan text will describe the parks and protected areas within the boundary of the management unit that contribute to the achievement of management objectives. This description will include a list of the provincial parks, conservation reserves, and other protected areas (e.g., national parks, forest reserves), the management emphasis for the protected area and, if applicable, the class of park. In addition, the plan text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the vicinity of these areas.

The plan text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have implications for forest management activities. The plan text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within these areas.
2.5 Social and Economic Description

The social and economic description for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10, Appendix IV) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the social and economic description.

2.5.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context

The plan text will list communities that receive substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest products from the management unit, communities that have substantial employment related to the forest industry and Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

2.5.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles

Demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section 2.5.1 will be summarized in the text. The summary will include:

(a) population trends for each community;
(b) community diversity for each community;
(c) income for each community; and
(d) employment by industry for each community.

The summary will describe the importance of the forest to individual communities. The demographic profiles will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete profiles.

2.5.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

The plan text will include a summary of the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest organized by sector. The sectors include:

(a) timber;
(b) recreation and tourism;
(c) mining, aggregate and hydro generation; and
(d) other.
2.6 Aboriginal Background Information Report

The plan text will summarize the use of natural resources on the management unit by Aboriginal communities and forest management-related problems and issues for those communities. The Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete report.

2.7 Values Maps

The plan text will briefly describe the information portrayed on the values maps (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8), and how it was used in the preparation of the forest management plan. The values maps will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will describe how the information on the values maps is organized (e.g., one map, series of maps) and reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the values maps.

Accompanying text in the supplementary documentation will include a list of sources of the information on the values map(s) or otherwise available in the values data base; identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

For cultural heritage values, including areas of archaeological potential, resource-based tourism values and old growth red and white pine forest communities, a brief description of the information portrayed on the values maps and the sources of the information will be provided in the supplementary documentation. Not all old growth red and white pine forest communities will be managed for old growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any such community will not be managed for old growth values must be provided in the supplementary documentation.

The plan text will describe the management implications of natural resource features, land uses and values, on the development of the forest management plan.
3.0 LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

3.1 Introduction

The plan text will outline the components of the long-term management direction. The text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation that contain the supporting information.

3.2 Current Forest Condition

3.2.1 Forest Units

The plan text will describe the forest units used in the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1). The forest units for the management unit and the related provincial forest types, will be identified in FMP-3. The plan text will provide the rationale for the forest units, and if the forest units differ from those in past plans, the rationale for any changes will be provided.

A summary of the managed Crown productive forest land area of the management unit by forest unit will be provided in FMP-4. The production forest area that is available for timber production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be identified separately. The plan text will contain the reasons that production forest area is unavailable for timber production. The plan text will describe the management implications of the current area by forest unit, on the development of the forest management plan.

The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the forest modeling assumptions related to forest units.

3.2.2 Habitat

The plan text will describe the habitat classifications used in the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2.2.2). The plan text will also describe any management implications concerning the distribution and abundance of habitat types that have influenced the long-term management direction.

Where applicable, maps showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of special interest, will be included in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains these maps.

The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the forest modeling assumptions related to habitat classification.
3.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern

The plan text will describe the forest landscape pattern classification and the current forest landscape pattern (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3). Maps of the forest landscape pattern will be included in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains these maps.

The plan text will describe the management implications of the current forest landscape pattern on the development of the forest management plan.

3.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

The plan text will describe any other forest classifications used in the development of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The plan text will also describe the management implications of the results of these classifications on the development of the forest management plan.

The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with any forest modeling assumptions related to other classifications.

3.3 Silvicultural Ground Rules

The silvicultural ground rules will be documented in FMP-5 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2). Any silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules that differs from the recommendations in the appropriate silvicultural guide will be recorded in FMP-5 as an exception, with the rationale for use of the treatment described in the text of the plan.

The plan text will describe the strategic silvicultural options, used to represent silviculture in the analysis. The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the forest modeling assumptions related to strategic silvicultural options, including rationale and details for each option, and any sensitivity analysis conducted during the development of the options.

3.4 Management Considerations

The plan text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations affected the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

The plan text will summarize the information used to identify the management considerations, the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm or change past management direction.
3.5 Desired Forest and Benefits

The plan text will describe the desired forest and benefits for the management unit. The text will include a description of how the planning team and local citizens committee considered the background information, the desires of the public and the Aboriginal communities in determining the desired forest and benefits. The plan text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting influenced the desired forest and benefits for the management unit. A summary of the results will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.2.5). The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the summary of the results of the meeting.

The plan text will describe the results and conclusions of scoping investigations undertaken to determine the extent to which the desired forest and benefits can be realized over time (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The scoping runs will be included in digital form in the analysis package contained in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the scoping investigations.

3.6 Objectives and Indicators

The plan text will describe the management objectives and indicators developed for the management unit. The Crown Forest Sustainability Act objective category will be identified in FMP-6 for each management objective developed to address the indicators identified in Figure A-5 (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1). For each management objective, the associated indicators, and the time when each indicator is to be assessed, will also be documented in FMP-6.

The plan text will document the desirable levels for indicators. The plan text will also document how desirable levels were established, in consideration of background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5), and the results of the scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other plans or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives will be stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be identified.

3.7 Management Strategy

The plan text will describe the management strategy associated with the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2). The types and levels of activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management objectives investigated during the development of the management strategy, will be described.
The plan text will contain a description of the future forest condition projected following implementation of the management strategy. The outputs of forest modelling for the management strategy will provide the source for the 100-year projections of quantifiable objectives, and will be documented in the plan. The projections in the plan include:

(a) forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-7);
(b) habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-8);
(c) available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-9); and
(d) available harvest volume by species group (FMP-10).

The plan text will describe the change from the current to the projected forest condition, and the implications of the projected change in area of each forest unit (FMP-7).

The plan text will describe the change from the current to the projected level of habitat for each selected wildlife species, and the implications of the projected change (FMP-8).

The projected level of available harvest area (FMP-9) and available harvest volume (FMP-10) will be portrayed graphically in the plan. The volume graph will also present:

(a) projections from past forest management plans;
(b) historic wood utilization; and
(c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the Regional Wood Supply Strategies.

The plan text will describe the change from the current to the projected available harvest area by forest unit and volume by species group, and the implications of the projected change.

If desirable levels of all management objectives could not be achieved, the implications of not achieving the desirable levels will be discussed and rationale provided. The results of further analysis undertaken during development of the management strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.6) will be described in the text.

The projected level of operations, revenues and expenditures will be documented in FMP-11. The plan text will include a discussion of the analysis conducted by a registered professional forester to determine the necessary levels of renovation and tending activities and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the forest management plan. The text will also describe how the analysis of renovation and tending activities, and associated expenditures, was used in the development of the management strategy.

The outputs of forest modelling for the management strategy will be included in digital form in the analysis package. The decisions made in the development of the management strategy will be documented in the analysis package. The text will reference the sections of the analysis package which contain the decisions made and the outputs of forest modeling.
The plan text will document any situations where analysis principles (Part A, Section 1.2.4.3) could not be followed, or were felt to be inappropriate. The documentation will include rationale for not following the principle.

The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in Appendix III.

### 3.8 Available Harvest Area

The plan text will describe the levels of available harvest area for each forest unit and discuss any associated management implications (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2, FMP-9). The text will also discuss trends in available harvest area from previous plans.

### 3.9 Selection of Areas for Operations

The plan text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification of areas eligible for harvest and the selection of areas for harvest, for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.6.4). Areas selected for harvest for the ten-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit. The text will document how the criteria reflect upon the management strategy, and discuss the relative importance of each criterion and its role in selecting the areas for harvest. The rationale for the selected harvest areas for the ten-year period, and for each five-year term, will be documented in the plan text.

The selected and optional harvest areas map will portray the areas selected for harvest for the ten-year period, by each five-year term, and the optional harvest areas. The maps will be contained in the supplementary documentation of the plan and the location of the maps will be referenced in the plan text. If the selected harvest area by forest unit is not closely balanced between the two five-year terms, the rationale will be documented in the plan text.

The text will describe how the harvest areas selected contribute to the achievement of the frequency distribution of forest disturbance size class template (FMP-12). Rationale for harvest areas selected for the ten-year period that do not contribute to the achievement of the template will be provided.

The plan text will describe any factors which limited the selection of areas for harvest, such as unresolved conflicts over forest resource use, and the effects of these limitations on the achievement of forest management objectives.

The text will document input from the public that influenced the selection of areas for harvest.

### 3.10 Assessment of Objective Achievement

For each management objective, the plan text will document the results of the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3 and 1.3.7). The levels of objective
achievement and their relationship to desirable levels, including any differences, will also be
documented. If the level of objective achievement is outside of the desirable level for an
objective, rationale will be provided. A summary of the management strategy’s projected
objective achievement, desirable levels and targets will be recorded in FMP-13.

3.11 Social and Economic Assessment

The plan text will describe the results of the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section
1.2.6.5). The plan text will also describe the methodology used to assess the social and
economic impacts of the management strategy.
4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS

4.1 Introduction

The plan text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will indicate the areas selected for operations for the first five-year term (Part B, Section 3.9) and will describe their detailed planning of operations.

4.2 Prescriptions for Operations

4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

The operational prescriptions for all areas of concern within the areas of operations for the five year term, which were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, will be documented in FMP-14.

For areas of concern prescriptions that required the completion of supplementary documentation forms, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the additional information, including public and Aboriginal comments, for the operational prescriptions. Any objections to an operational prescription for an area of concern as a result of public or Aboriginal comment will be recorded in FMP-14, and objections related to prescriptions that address visual aesthetics will be specifically highlighted. The responses to those objections will be documented on the supplementary documentation forms in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix VIII.

Any operational prescription for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be identified in FMP-14 as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7) will describe the methods which will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the operational prescription. The exception will also be recorded in the supplementary documentation (Appendix VIII). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNR District Manager’s certification and recommendation of the forest management plan for approval (Figure B-2).

Areas of concern will be identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on those maps. All areas of concern documented in FMP-14 will be cross-referenced to the operations maps, and if applicable, the supplementary documentation forms in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the current approved forest management plan will be documented in FMP-14. The areas of concern will also be identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on the maps.
4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

Silvicultural ground rules, which were developed for all forest unit - ecosite combinations on the management unit, are documented FMP-5 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

The plan text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending presented in FMP-5 will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted areas, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

The forest units and silvicultural ground rules for each area of operations will be identified on the operations maps for the first five-year term. The digital database that accompanies those maps will serve as the stand list for harvest, renewal and tending operations. The plan text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each silvicultural ground rule will be the most likely treatment. The plan text will also contain a statement that this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of plan preparation, and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules at the time of implementation of operations.

The locations where the following silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur during the five-year term will also be portrayed on the operations maps:

(a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;
(b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;
(c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a result of application of the planning procedure for insect pest management programs; and
(d) areas available for fuelwood.

The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

4.3 Harvest Operations

The areas planned for harvest operations for the first five-year term, and the areas proposed for harvest operations for the second five-year term, were identified on the maps and rationalized in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. The plan text will describe the distribution of harvest areas between the two five-year terms. If the planned harvest area for the first five-year term substantially exceeds one-half of the available harvest area by forest unit, rationale will be provided in the text.
The plan text will include a discussion describing how current landscape guide direction, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, was considered during the finalization of harvest operations.

4.3.1 Harvest Areas

The areas selected for harvest operations for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1) are documented in Part B, Section 3.9. The ten-year area is the forecast harvest area. The selected area for which detailed operational planning has been completed for the first five-year term, is referred to as the planned harvest area. The available harvest area and the forecast harvest area for the ten-year period, and the planned harvest area for the first five-year term, will be described in the text and recorded in FMP-15. If applicable, the plan text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee (FMP-19).

A summary of residual stand structure for each planned forest disturbance, in accordance with the provisions in MNR’s approved forest management guide, as revised from time to time, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be provided in a table in the supplementary documentation. For planned clearcuts within a planned forest disturbance, where practical, areas that will be retained as residual stand structure (i.e., insular and peninsular residual) will be identified on the operations maps for the five-year term. When the areas of residual stand structure on the operations maps do not meet the recommended area, the amount of additional area planned to be left during implementation of operations will be identified in the table in the supplementary documentation. Rationale will be provided in the supplementary documentation for harvest areas that do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the forest management guide. The text will provide a summary of the rationale and reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the rationale and summary table.

If there are any substantial differences between the available harvest area and the projections in the management strategy, and the forecast harvest area, the rationale will be documented in the text. The differences should be evaluated in terms of age class or stage of management and age class, as applicable.

If stands are identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D, Section 6.0), the area of these stands planned for harvest will be documented in the plan text. The plan text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

The planned harvest areas will be portrayed on the operations maps in the supplementary documentation of the plan. A digital list of all planned harvest areas will be provided in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps and list.
4.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area

The requirements for the planning of surplus harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. Any areas within the planned harvest areas, which are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit, will be identified as surplus harvest area. The plan text will document the total area and volume for the surplus harvest area. Any limitations on the utilization of the surplus harvest area (e.g., lack of markets) will be explained in the plan text. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest, if the surplus harvest area is not harvested, will be documented in the text.

Surplus harvest area will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.4. The plan text will contain a description of the area of bridging operations, by forest unit. The text will also include an acknowledgement that the bridging operations are limited to three months of harvest operations, and will be completed by June 30 of the first year of the plan.

The plan text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including an estimate of the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

Areas of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

4.3.4 Planned Clearcuts

The requirements for the planning of clearcuts are described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2. The planned clearcuts for the five-year term will be provided in FMP-16. Each planned clearcut that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in FMP-16, with the accompanying silvicultural or biological rationale. The maximum and average size of planned clearcuts will be documented in the plan text.

4.3.5 Harvest Volume

The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the harvest volume for the forecast harvest area, for the ten-year period, will be recorded in FMP-17. The method used to estimate the volume is...
volume for the forecast harvest area will be described in the plan text. If there are any substantial differences between the available harvest volume and the forecast harvest volume, by conifer and hardwood subtotals, an explanation will be provided in the text.

4.3.6 Wood Utilization

The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization, by product and species, for each mill reliant on wood supply from the management unit. The text will also include a discussion of the sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes.

The harvest volume for the planned harvest area will be recorded by volume type (i.e., utilized and unutilized), product and species in FMP-18. Upon request by a major overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. The forecast harvest volume and the planned harvest volume for each mill which relies on wood supply from the management unit will be recorded, by species and product, in FMP-19.

The plan text will include a discussion of whether or not the MNR wood supply commitment levels were achieved and the implications. If open market volume has been identified, a discussion of the implications will be provided in the plan text.

If unutilized volume is available for fuelwood, the fuelwood areas will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary documentation of the plan and location of the maps will be referenced in the plan text.

The plan text will include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan is not an agreement to make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to supply wood to a particular mill.

4.3.7 Salvage

The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. The plan text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of salvage harvest operations. Upon request by a major overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees in tables similar to FMP-18. Areas of salvage harvest will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary documentation of the plan and location of the maps will be referenced in the plan text.
4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume

The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2. The plan text will briefly describe the purpose and function of contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified.

The contingency area and an estimate of the volume for the ten-year period will be recorded in FMP-20.

The contingency area will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary documentation. A digital list of all contingency areas will be provided in the supplementary documentation. The plan text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps and list.

4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations

4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3.

The forecast and planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvesting and natural disturbances will be summarized by treatment in FMP-21. The treatments in the table will be consistent with the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules (FMP-5). The plan text will describe supplemental treatments or retreatments, if applicable.

The areas selected for renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term will be portrayed on operations maps for the first five-year term and location of the maps will be referenced in the plan text.

The plan text will provide a comparison of the types and levels of planned treatments for the first five-year term and the level of regeneration activities projected in the long-term management direction, and a rationale for any substantial differences.

4.4.2 Renewal Support

The sustainable forest licensee’s program for the collection of seed, and the production of nursery stock, during the first five-year term will be described in the plan text. A forecast of the volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by species), for the first five-year term will also be documented in the plan text.

Tree improvement activities implemented during the first five-year term to support the production of improved seed will be described in the plan text, with reference to existing seed
orchards and tree improvement strategies. The locations of tree improvement activities will be identified on the operations maps and the location of the maps will be referenced in the plan text.

4.5 Roads

4.5.1 Roads and Road Corridors

The plan text will describe the results of primary road corridor planning for 20 years (Part A, Sections 1.2.7 and 1.3.6.1), and branch road corridor planning for ten years (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2), and identify roads to be constructed during the ten-year period on the management unit.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use management strategy, and the rationale for each new branch road corridor and associated use management strategy, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VII).

Documentation of new, or changes to existing, use management strategies for primary, branch and operational roads, or changes to use management strategies for confirmed primary road corridors, will also be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, Appendix VII).

Selected one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads required for the next 20 years, and confirmed one kilometre wide primary road corridors from the previous forest management plan, will be identified on the operations maps.

Each primary and branch road corridor, within which a road will be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the portion to be constructed during the five-year term, will be identified on the operations maps. The 100 metre wide location for each crossing of an area of concern, and where practical, acceptable variations on the location, will also be identified on the operations maps.

Each new primary and branch road, and network of operational roads (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4), to be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, will be identified in FMP-22. Planned construction, maintenance, monitoring, access control and future use management for primary and branch roads, and networks of operational roads, for the five-year term will also be recorded in FMP-22. For existing primary and branch roads, and networks of operational roads, maintenance, monitoring, access control and abandonment and decommissioning activities for the five-year term will also be recorded in the Existing Roads table (Appendix II). Roads that will be decommissioned during the ten-year period of the forest management plan will be identified on the operations map.

The text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that contains the documentation and maps.
4.5.2 Roads and Areas of Concern

The plan text will discuss the implications of road crossings of areas of concern that are not water crossings (Part A, 1.3.6.3 and 1.3.6.4). The plan text will also include a statement that the 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction in the forest management plan for area of concern crossings, which involve water crossings, are preliminary locations and conditions. The statement will indicate the locations and conditions will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.6.1), consistent with the acceptable variations described in the forest management plan.

If a primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR policy, the applicable policy and Environmental Assessment Act requirements for parks and protected areas will also apply. The documentation will be included in the supplementary documentation and referenced in the plan text.

Each 100 metre wide crossing, and any acceptable variations, of an area of concern within a primary and branch road corridor for the five-year term, will be identified on the operations maps.

For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary and branch road corridor, the conditions on construction and acceptable variations to the locations and conditions will be summarized in FMP-23. Documentation of the analysis and rationale for the 100 metre wide crossing location, construction conditions, and acceptable variations to those locations and conditions, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VIII).

For operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the location(s) or construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be summarized in FMP-23. Documentation of the conditions will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VIII). Where practical, the conditions on the locations and/or construction will be portrayed on the operations maps.

The text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that contains the documentation and maps.

4.6 Revenues and Expenditures

The plan text will identify the projected revenues from harvest, and expenditures required for renewal and tending operations, insect pest management and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section 1.3.7). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to estimate revenues and expenditures associated with the implementation of harvest, renewal and tending operations.

The forecast of revenues from harvest operations, and the forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source, will be summarized in FMP-24 for the five-year term.
4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

The monitoring and assessment program will include forest operation inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of regeneration success, and monitoring of roads and water crossings.

The monitoring program described in the plan text will include:

(a) a general description of the forest operations inspection program for the management unit, and specific provisions for monitoring operations in individual areas of concern and groups of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses and values;

(b) a description of the exceptions monitoring program which will be used to:

(i) determine the effectiveness of any silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides as described in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* as identified by MNR as applicable to the management unit; and

(ii) determine the effectiveness of operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable guides;

(c) a description of the program for carrying out assessments of regeneration success for both naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including assessments that are used in the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence forest region; and

(d) a description of the program for monitoring roads and water crossings.

4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

The sustainable forest licensee’s ten-year strategic compliance plan will be developed in accordance with the requirements of MNR’s *Guideline for Forest Industry Compliance Planning*. MNR’s *Forest Compliance Handbook* also provides guidance for the preparation of the compliance plan. The handbook describes the various types and stages of forest operations inspections, and the requirement for the sustainable forest licensee to produce inspection reports. The ten-year strategic compliance plan will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections, particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest operations inspections (e.g., forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the submission of inspection reports to MNR. The compliance plan will be included in the supplementary documentation and referenced in the plan text.

The plan text will describe the MNR district program for auditing forest operations and forest operations inspections. The plan text will also include a description of opportunities for involvement of the local citizens committee in forest operations inspections, and MNR district monitoring of forest operations.
4.7.2 Exceptions

The plan text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the management unit. The monitoring programs for exceptions, including methodologies, timing and duration of monitoring, the documentation and reporting of results, and the opportunities for local citizens committee participation, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan, and referenced in the plan text.

4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success

The plan text will describe the monitoring program to assess regeneration success for naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess the success of stands managed under the selection silvicultural system (Part A, Section 1.3.8). The results of assessments are the basis for determining if regeneration levels associated with the management strategy have been met.

The monitoring program will include the methodologies used, timing and duration of activities, documentation and reporting of results, and opportunities for local citizens committee participation.

The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement of standards contained in the silvicultural ground rules. The *Silvicultural Effectiveness Monitoring Manual for Ontario* describes the information to be collected and survey methodologies.

A summary of the area to be assessed for the determination of regeneration success will be provided in FMP-25. The plan text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be successfully regenerated during each five-year term.

4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings

A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out during the first five-year term will be provided in the plan text. The description will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in FMP-23.

4.8 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

A description of the expected effect of proposed types and levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations on the achievement of progress towards the long-term management direction will be provided in the plan text (Part A, Section 1.3.11). The description will include the assessment (Part A, Section 1.3.11) and a discussion of the supporting modeling.
If proposed types and levels of operations deviate from the projections in the long-term management direction, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided.
5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY

The plan text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as to how the forest management plan has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section 1.3.11). The conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3), the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.6.5) and prescriptions for the protection of values.
6.0 DOCUMENTATION

The forest management plan will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made, during the planning process. In addition, there is other documentation of information, which because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the plan.

6.1 Supplementary Documentation

The supplementary documentation of the forest management plan includes:

(a) a list of the forest management guides that were used in the preparation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.3);

(b) a series of maps produced at an appropriate scale (see the Forest Information Manual for the standards for maps to be included in each copy of the forest management plan), including:

(i) values maps, including a separate values map for resource-based tourism values (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8);

(ii) landscape pattern maps (e.g., disturbance, habitat) (Part A, Sections 1.2.2.2 and 1.2.2.3);

(iii) selected and optional harvest areas map, which also portrays the 20-year selected primary road corridors and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.3.3.1, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.2);

(iv) the Existing Roads Table (Appendix II);

(v) operations maps (composite) - provides an overview of planned operations for the 10-year period of the forest management plan showing:

• existing road network, including names of primary roads;

• road access restrictions, and roads scheduled for decommissioning;

• lakes and rivers and their associated names;

• mapsheet numbers, or a key to the mapsheets;

• operations for the 10-year plan period, that portrays the operations planned for the first five-year term and proposed operations for the second five-year term and boundaries for the areas of operations;

• primary and branch road corridors for roads planned for construction during the 10-year plan period; and

• past 10 years of harvest area;

(vi) operations maps (operational scale) – provides the areas of operations for the 10-year period of the plan, and detailed operations for the first five-year term, including:

• harvest areas;

• surplus areas;

• contingency areas;

• bridging areas;

• second-pass harvest areas;
• primary and branch road corridors for roads planned for construction during the 10-year plan period;
• road access restrictions, and roads scheduled for decommissioning;
• renewal and tending areas;
• operational prescriptions for area of concern prescriptions;
• silvicultural ground rules;
• candidate prescribed burns;
• proposed areas of aerial pesticide application; and
• areas available for fuelwood;
(c) for information on other forest resources (Part A, Section 1.1.7.7):
  (i) a list of references to the sources of the information on the values maps or otherwise available in the data base;
  (ii) identification of the methodologies used for data collection;
  (iii) the reasons why some sites which contain old growth red and white pine forest communities will not be managed for old growth values; and
  (iv) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing, and a discussion of how those data gaps will be addressed through long-term data collection programs;
(d) a table of residual stand structure requirements with supporting rationale (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2);
(e) a list of references to the sources of the information used to update the current Forest Resource Inventory data (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5);
(f) the analysis package, which describes the inputs and assumptions used, and the results and conclusions of analysis conducted, during the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.1.6);
(g) the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) (unless otherwise specified in the Aboriginal consultation approach developed for each interested community);
(h) a summary of the Aboriginal consultation approach for each Aboriginal community;
  (i) the recommendations from the year seven management unit annual report (Part A, Section 1.1.7.4);
  (j) a summary of how the results of any audits which have been undertaken for the management unit, in particular independent audits, have been addressed in the forest management plan;
  (k) the monitoring programs for exceptions, including methodologies, timing and duration of monitoring, the documentation and reporting of results, and the opportunities for local citizens committee participation (Part B, Section 4.7.2);
  (l) documentation of the planning of primary and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.2.7 and 1.3.6.2), and the locations of primary and branch roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3);
  (m) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), and conditions on operational roads (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4);
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

(n) a list, in digital form, of forest stands selected for harvest, which includes the following information for each stand (Part B, Sections 4.2.2 and 4.3.1):
   (i) total area and associated volumes;
   (ii) area and associated preferred silvicultural treatment package (from the silvicultural ground rules) for the stand or portion of the stand;
   (iii) area and specific prescription for the stand or portion of the stand with a modified operations prescription, as a result of area of concern planning; and
   (iv) area of the stand or portion of the stand with a reserve prescription, as a result of area of concern planning;

(o) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan (in the event of a request for an individual Environmental Assessment, this documentation will form part of the record provided by MNR to the Ministry of Environment), which includes:
   (i) a summary of all comments received and the consideration of those comments;
   (ii) any documentation produced regarding issue resolution; and
   (iii) a summary of each stage (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent, etc.);

(p) a report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during plan preparation; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 3.2.6);

(q) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed during the preparation of the plan, including any significant disagreements among planning team members on major issues;

(r) any documentation produced regarding plan review and approval, including the preliminary and final lists of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.4.4.1 and 1.5.2) and a list of major changes from the draft to final plan;

(s) the planning team’s terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1);

(i) forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3 and Part B, Section 7.0); and

(u) Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) briefing note (Part B, Section 1.0).

The draft forest management plan will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft plan submission. The approved forest management plan will include all of the supplementary documentation.

6.2 Other Documentation

The public correspondence related to the development of the plan will be retained on file at the appropriate MNR district or area office. The Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the Aboriginal communities.
7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY

A forest management plan summary will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft plan and public inspection of the approved plan. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5) for the duration of the public consultation periods. For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, a French language version of the summary will be prepared. The local citizens committee may provide advice in the preparation of the plan summary.

The forest management plan summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the plan for each item:

(a) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
(b) a general description of the forest;
(c) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of MNR and/or an organization other than MNR, such as a forest company), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;
(d) a summary of the report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the plan (NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.);
(e) a summary of the long-term management direction;
(f) a summary of the silvicultural prescriptions commonly used on the management unit;
(g) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the plan, including any significant disagreements among planning team members on major issues;
(h) the names of the MNR District Manager, plan author, and all members of the local citizens committee;
(i) the schedule for any remaining formal public consultation opportunities;
(j) a comment form;
(k) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1);
(l) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations and names of new and existing roads, for the ten-year term of the plan. The map will be prepared at a suitable scale to allow for appropriate resolution of the information and for ease of reproduction; and
(m) an index to the environmental assessment components of the forest management plan (Figure B-4), located on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents.
8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

This section prescribes the content requirements for the planned operations for the second five-year term. This section will act as a template for writing the planned operations. Planned operations are comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. Planned operations must contain page numbers and line numbers.

The Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-5A) will be located at the front of each draft and approved planned operations.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final planned operations. For plans prepared by an organization other than MNR, the senior company official will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The approved planned operations must also be signed by the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of the planned operations, those people will certify the parts of the planned operations that they prepared, and that they have prepared those parts of the planned operations in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-5B.

A list of exceptions (Figure B-6) will follow the title and certification page.

The list of planned operations contributors (Figure B-7) will follow the list of exceptions.

8.1 Introduction

The plan text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section.

A brief description of how MNR’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the planned operations for the second five-year term must also be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing note. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the SEV briefing note. The text will also reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the background information.
Figure B-5A: Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page

TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN, April 1, _____ to March 31, ______
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]

I hereby certify that I have prepared these planned operations, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[Plan Author]* [date]

Submitted by: [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] [date]

I recommend that these planned operations be approved for implementation and certify that they have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that these planned operations have been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In these planned operations, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

[MNR District Manager] [date]

Approved by: [MNR Regional Director] [date]
**Figure B-5B: Phase II Planned Operations - Title and Certification Page**

For Sections Not Prepared by the Plan Author

**PLANNED OPERATIONS**

for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]

for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the planned operations as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure B-6: Phase II Planned Operations - List of Exceptions

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______
for the [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the
recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of
concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and
guidelines) in the applicable guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific
section of the planned operations that provides documentation of the exception is also
referenced in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of Exception</th>
<th>Specific Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure B-7: Phase II Planned Operations Contributors

TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN - April 1, ______ to March 31, ______
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, ______ to March 31, ______

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

______________________________________________________________
Plan Author

______________________________________________________________

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

______________________________________________________________

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE MEMBERS

______________________________________________________________

A brief statement that reports on the local citizens committee’s agreement or disagreement with the
planned operations:

______________________________________________________________

______________________________________________________________

______________________________________________________________

PLAN REVIEWERS

______________________________________________________________

______________________________________________________________

______________________________________________________________
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

8.2 Prescriptions for Operations

Part B, Section 4.2.1 describes the documentation requirements for operational prescriptions for areas of concern. Part B, Section 4.2.2 describes the documentation requirements for prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending areas. These requirements also apply to the planned operations for the second five-year term. For operational prescriptions for areas of concern, FMP-14 will be updated. If a new acceptable alternative silvicultural treatment is identified for a forest unit, an updated version of FMP-5 will be produced.

8.3 Harvest Operations

Part B, Section 4.3 describes the documentation requirements for harvest operations. These requirements will apply to the planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

The planned harvest areas for the second five-year term will be portrayed on operations maps in the supplementary documentation and will be referenced in the text. The text will provide rationale for changes from the areas proposed for harvest for the second five-year term in the forest management plan, and these harvest areas will be specifically identified on the operations maps. The rationale will include consideration of the comments received in Phase II, Stage One of consultation.

The following tables will be updated for the planned harvest operations for the second five-year term:

- FMP-15
- FMP-16
- FMP-17
- FMP-18
- FMP-19
- FMP-20

Part B, Sections 4.3 to 4.5 provides direction for the text that will accompany each of these tables in the planned operations for the second five-year term.

The contingency area for harvest operations will be portrayed separately on operations maps for the second five-year term. Changes to contingency area identified in the forest management plan, will be described and rationalized in the text. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.
8.4 Renewal and Tending Operations

Part B, Section 4.4 describes the documentation requirements for renewal and tending operations. These requirements will apply to the planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

FMP-21 will be prepared for the planned operations for the second five-year term. Part B, Section 4.4.1 describes the text that will accompany the table.

The areas selected for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term will be portrayed on operations maps in the supplementary documentation and will be referenced in the text.

8.5 Roads

Part B, Section 4.5 describes the documentation requirements for roads. These requirements apply to planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

FMP-22 and FMP-23 will be prepared for the planned road construction and use management for the second five-year term. Part B, Section 4.5.1 describes the text that will accompany FMP-22 and Part B, Section 4.5.2 describes the text that will accompany FMP-23.

Roads planned for construction will be identified on the operations maps. The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

The text will provide rationale for changes to road corridors identified in the forest management plan, and these changes will be specifically identified on the operations maps. The rationale will include consideration of the comments received in Phase II, Stage One of consultation.

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in the Existing Roads Table (Appendix II) in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the Existing Roads Table.

8.6 Revenues and Expenditures

Part B, Section 4.6 describes the documentation requirements for revenues and expenditures. These requirements also apply to planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

FMP-24 will be updated and included with the planned operations for the second five-year term.
8.7 Monitoring and Assessment

Part B, Section 4.7 describes the documentation requirements for the monitoring program. These requirements apply to the planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

FMP-25 will be updated and included with the planned renewal assessment operations for the second five-year term.

8.8 Supplementary Documentation

The updated supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year term includes (Part B, Section 6.0):

(a) an updated list of the forest management guides that were used in the preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term;

(b) a series of maps produced at an appropriate scale (see the Forest Information Manual for the standards for the maps to be included in each copy of the forest management plan), including:
   (i) where updates have been made, an updated values maps, including a separate updated values map for resource-based tourism values;
   (ii) updated operations maps (composite) - provides an overview of planned operations for the 10-year period of the forest management plan; and
   (iii) operations maps (operational scale) – provides the detailed operations for the second five-year term;

(c) for information on other forest resources, a list of references to the sources of the information on the values map(s) or otherwise available in the data base,

(d) identification of the methodologies used for data collection;

(e) the updated Existing Roads Table (Appendix II);

(f) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing, and a discussion of how those data gaps will be addressed through long-term data collection programs;

(g) the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report (unless otherwise specified by an aboriginal community);

(h) the updated summary of the Aboriginal consultation approach for each Aboriginal community;

(i) the conclusions and recommendations from the approved year ten annual report;

(j) a summary of how the results of any audits which have been undertaken for the management unit, in particular independent audits, have been addressed in the planning of operations for the second five-year term;

(k) a summary of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;
(l) the monitoring programs for exceptions, including methodologies, timing and duration of monitoring, the documentation and reporting of results, and the opportunities for local citizens committee participation;
(m) documentation of the planning of road corridors, and the locations of roads in areas of concern;
(n) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern, including conditions on operational roads;
o a list in digital form of forest stands selected for harvest, which includes the information as identified in Section 4.0;
(p) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of planned operations for the second five-year term (in the event of a request for an individual Environmental Assessment, this documentation will form part of the record provided by MNR to the Ministry of Environment), which includes:
   (i) summary of all comments received and the consideration of those comments;
   (ii) any documentation produced regarding issue resolution; and
   (iii) summary of each stage (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent, etc.)
(q) a report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during the preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if any;
(r) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed during the preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term, including any significant disagreements among planning team members on major issues;
(s) any documentation produced regarding plan review and approval, including the preliminary and final lists of required alteration and list of major changes from the draft planned operations to the final planned operations for the second five-year term;
(t) an updated planning team’s terms of reference;
(u) SEV briefing note; and
(v) summary of planned operations for the second five-year term.

8.9 Planned Operations Summary

A summary of planned operations for the second five-year term will be prepared for the draft planned operations and approved planned operations. For designated areas under the French Language Services Act, a French language version of the summary will be prepared. The local citizens committee may provide advice in the preparation of the planned operations summary.

The summary of planned operations will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the plan or planned operations for each item:
1. **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

2. (a) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;

3. (b) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations and names of new and existing roads, for the planned operations for the second five-year term of the plan. The map will be prepared at a suitable scale to allow for appropriate resolution of the information and for ease of reproduction;

4. (c) a summary of the report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during the preparation of the planned operations; and a brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the planned operations (NOTE: The committee will prepare this summary.);

5. (d) any updates to the contents of the forest management plan summary prepared in Phase I (Part B, Section 7.0);

6. (e) the schedule for any remaining formal public consultation opportunities, if applicable;

7. (f) a comment form; and

8. (g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the planning of operations for the second five-year term to seek resolution of issues in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

**9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES**

The following tables are required for a forest management plan.
## MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________

### PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO ________

### FMP-1: Management Unit Land Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Land Ownership and Type</th>
<th>Crown Ownership (Hectares)</th>
<th>Patent Ownership (Hectares)</th>
<th>Other Ownership</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Managed</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Crown Timber</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsurveyed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-forested</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grass &amp; Meadow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unclassified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Non-Forested</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forested</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Productive Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treed Muskeg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Muskeg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brush &amp; Alder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Non-Productive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent Disturbance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below Regeneration Standards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Stands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Production</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Productive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Forested</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total Crown:** | **Total Patent:**
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-I: Management Unit Land Summary

This table summarizes the area of different land types by land ownership for the management unit at the start of the plan period. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory where information is available and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area in hectares by FRI land type for each land ownership:

Crown:
Managed: All Crown land available for forest management purposes including lands patented to Ontario government agencies where appropriate. Crown – Managed may include area of some or all inventory land types (e.g., treed muskeg, protection forest and production forest). Area affected by forest management planning decisions (e.g., area of concern reserves) is included.

Other: All Crown land that is not available for forest management purposes through legal designation. This includes provincial parks under the Provincial Parks Act and conservation reserves under the Public Lands Act. It also includes areas established by policy direction (where forest management activity is not permitted) and higher order land use decisions (e.g., Ontario Living Legacy).

Patent:
Crown Timber: Patent land where the Crown has rights to some or all timber.

Other: All remaining patent land. Includes lands patented to Ontario government agencies if not available for forest management purposes.

Other:
Includes all other land ownership including federal lands, Indian reserves, and agreement forests (county forests and conservation authority forests).

Notes for selected inventory land types:

Production Forest: Includes both production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

Recent Disturbance: Areas of stand replacing natural (e.g., fire, insect, blow down, etc.) or artificial (e.g., harvest) disturbance which have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.

Below Regeneration Standards: Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved forest management plan. Includes both natural disturbances and harvested area.

Forest Stands: All existing forest stands and areas which have been successfully regenerated.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Provincial Forest Type</th>
<th>Age Class</th>
<th>Protection Forest (ha)</th>
<th>Recent Disturbances</th>
<th>Below Regeneration Standards</th>
<th>Forest Stands</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Total Productive Forest Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provincial Forest Type Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-2: Summary of Crown Productive Forest by Provincial Forest Type

These tables summarize the area of Crown productive forest by provincial forest type and age class at the start of the plan period. Separate tables must be prepared for each of the crown land ownership categories described in FMP-1 (i.e., Crown – Managed and Crown – Other) as well as a table for the Crown Total. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory where information is available and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable ownership box.

Provincial Forest Type:
Enter the provincial forest type as defined by provincial policy.

Age Class:
Enter 20 year age classes, where applicable.

Protection Forest (ha):
Enter the area (in hectares) of protection forest by provincial forest type and 20-year age class for each land type.

Production Forest (ha):
Enter the area (in hectares) of production forest by land type, provincial forest type and age class, where applicable.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

Ensure that the total areas correspond with the productive forest subtotals in FMP-1.

Notes for selected inventory land types:

Production Forest: Includes both production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

Recent Disturbance: Areas of stand replacing natural (e.g., fire, insect, blow down, etc.) or artificial (e.g., harvest) disturbance which have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.

Below Regeneration Standards: Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved forest management plan. Includes both natural disturbances and harvested area.

Forest Stands: All existing forest stands and areas which have been successfully regenerated.
**PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________

PLAN PERIOD: _______ TO _______

**FMP-3: Description of Forest Units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit Code</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Ecosite(s)</th>
<th>Provincial Forest Type</th>
<th>Silvicultural System</th>
<th>FRI Parameters &amp; Criteria</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
Copie à des fins d’archivage. Veuillez consulter l’éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-3: Description of Forest Units

This table describes the forest units used to classify all forest stands of the management unit, including the stands that are not available for forest management activities. Forest units are used as the basis for summarizing data for many forest management plan, annual work schedule and annual report tables.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Forest Unit:
List each forest unit including an appropriate Code (maximum 6 characters) and a descriptive Name (maximum 20 characters). The list should include all forest units currently represented as well as forest units, which will occur in the future as a result of management actions.

Eco-sites:
Indicate the eco-site(s) which fall within the forest unit, based on the Forest Ecosystem Classification or the best available site information until such time as general standard eco-sites are developed.

Provincial Forest Type:
Indicate a single provincial forest type that is the best match for each forest unit.

Silvicultural System:
Indicate the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, and selection) to be used for the forest unit.

FRI Parameters & Criteria:
For the purpose of assigning a forest unit to each stand, identify the appropriate Forest Resource Inventory (FRI) parameters (e.g., species composition, site class, stocking) or other criteria by which the stands are classified (e.g., plantations).

Additional Information:
Indicate any other information, which is useful in describing each forest unit.
**MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** __________________________

**PLAN PERIOD:** __________ TO __________

---

**FMP-4: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Age Class</th>
<th>Protection Forest (ha)</th>
<th>Production Forest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unavailable (ha)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage of Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Available (ha)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.

Copie à des fins d'archivage. Veuillez consulter l'éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
### INSTRUCTIONS

#### FMP-4: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit

This table summarizes the area of managed productive Crown forest (as shown in Table FMP-1 and FMP-2) by forest unit and age class. The source of information for this table is the planning inventory with forest units as defined in FMP-3.

Complete the table as follows:

1. **Forest Unit:** Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-3.
2. **Age Class:** Enter 20-year age classes for clearcut and shelterwood management. This column is not completed for the forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.
3. **Protection Forest:** Enter the area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class.
4. **Production Forest:**
   - **Unavailable:** Enter the area (in hectares) of the Crown managed production forest that is not available for timber production as a result of forest management planning decisions, current forest management guides and other known factors (e.g., actual or anticipated reserves, inaccessible area).
5. **Stage of Management:** Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.
6. **Available:** Enter the area (in hectares) of the managed Crown production forest area minus the Unavailable area.

Enter all totals and subtotals as required.

Ensure that the total areas in the Protection Forest and Production Forest (Unavailable and Available) columns correspond with the productive forest subtotals in Table FMP-1 and the applicable FMP-2.
### FMP-5: Silvicultural Ground Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SGR Code</th>
<th>Silvicultural System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current Condition</th>
<th>Future Condition</th>
<th>Regeneration Standards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit</td>
<td>Ecosite(s)</td>
<td>Forest Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand Characteristics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Information
- Development Information

#### Silvicultural Treatments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Harvest Method</th>
<th>Logging Method</th>
<th>Site Preparation</th>
<th>Regeneration</th>
<th>Tending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Most Common Treatment Package</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Acceptable Alternative Treatments
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-5: Silvicultural Ground Rules

This table describes the silvicultural systems and types of treatments that may be used to manage forest units for a specific current condition in order to achieve a predicted future condition. The source of information for the table are the applicable Silvicultural Guides and the knowledge and experience of the plan author and planning team.

Complete the table as follows for each silvicultural ground rule.

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

SGR Code: Enter a label (maximum 15 characters) that identifies the silvicultural ground rule. This code is used to reference the silvicultural ground rule elsewhere in the plan.

Silvicultural System: Enter the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood and selection) under which each forest unit will be managed. Only one silvicultural system will be identified for each forest unit.

Current Condition: Enter the Forest Unit (identified in FMP-3) and Eco-site(s). In describing eco-site, use the Forest Ecosystem Classification (FEC) or the best available site information. Provide any additional information as required.

Future Condition: Future conditions (resulting from the implementation of the silvicultural ground rule) will be described in terms of the predicted forest unit, stand characteristics and development information. Enter the predicted future forest unit as identified in FMP-3. Enter the anticipated future stand characteristics, which must include average species composition and stocking and may also include stand density or product. Future stand characteristics may be specified for various stand ages, but must as a minimum include the mature stand conditions. Conditions for multiple ages are the benchmark for assessing whether the stand is developing as anticipated. Enter a reference to the development information contained in the appendices and used in modelling this silvicultural ground rule at the forest level (e.g., Pj1-Intensive).

Regeneration Standards: Enter all the standards for determining regeneration success (i.e., acceptable species, the timeframes required, etc.). The standards of regeneration success must be consistent with the development information associated with this silvicultural ground rule.

Silvicultural Treatments: For each current forest unit/eco-site combination, the most common series of silvicultural treatments is presented in this table. Where there are several common distinct treatment packages, they may also be identified. As well, acceptable alternative treatments must also be identified. Silvicultural treatments include harvest method, logging method site preparation, regeneration and tending. Where a silvicultural treatment differs from the recommendations in the appropriate silvicultural guide, that treatment must be highlighted as an exception and monitoring requirements identified in the plan.

Harvest Method: Enter the harvest method (e.g., strip clearcut, uniform shelterwood) as well as any reference to commercial thinning.

Logging Method: Enter the logging method (full tree, tree length or shortwood) to be used. Where there are options, indicate under what conditions the different methods will be used. Special restrictions on the type of logging equipment, the prescription for logging or the timing of logging to ensure site compatibility, will be noted in the space provided.

Site Preparation: Enter the method(s) of site preparation (i.e., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn) as well as optional details as desired. Combinations of site preparation treatments (e.g., chemical site preparation followed by prescribed burning) are acceptable within a treatment package. It is not acceptable, however, to present optional treatments (e.g., chemical site preparation or prescribed burning) within a single silvicultural treatment package.

Regeneration: Enter the method(s) of regeneration treatments (i.e., natural, plant, seed) as well as optional details as desired.

Tending: Enter the tending methods (e.g., cleaning, spacing) which are required in order to meet the regeneration standard. Pre-commercial thinning is considered a tending treatment and should be identified here.
1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ________________________
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** ______ TO ______

### FMP-6: Summary of Management Objectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Objective</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
Copie à des fins d’archivage. Veuillez consulter l’éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-6: Summary of Management Objectives

This table provides a list of all management unit objectives established for the period of the plan.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name and plan period.

2. Management Objective:
   - List each objective in full text form. Quantitative and qualitative objectives are included.

3. Indicator:
   - Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for each management objective. For qualitative objectives, leave this column blank.

4. Timing of Assessment:
   - Identify the timing of assessment for each objective (e.g., “during plan development”, “year seven and ten annual reports”, “plan and reports”).
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________
2 PLAN PERIOD: _______ TO _______

FMP-7: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Type</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Type Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FMP-7: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest

This table summarizes the area of available Crown productive forest by forest type (e.g., forest unit or provincial forest type) and age (e.g., age class or seral stage) by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the future forest conditions over time resulting from the management strategy.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the management strategy.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Type:**

Enter the user defined forest type. This may be forest units as in FMP-3, forest unit groupings or provincial forest types.

**Age:**

Enter the user defined age. This may be a twenty year age class or a seral stage age.

**Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (in hectares) for each forest type/age at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy. The information shown for <Year 0> must be consistent with the Crown productive forest total summarized in FMP-1 and FMP-2 (Crown – Total).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________

### PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO ________

#### FMP-8: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selected Wildlife Species</th>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
Copie à des fins d'archivage. Veuillez consulter l'éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
### INSTRUCTIONS

#### FMP-8: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

This table summarizes the area of habitat for selected wildlife species by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the habitat availability over time resulting from the management strategy.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name and plan period.

2. **Selected Wildlife Species:** Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species occurring on the management unit. The selected species should include as a minimum the appropriate provincially and locally featured species. Provincial/regional analysis may reveal other species whose habitat is rare and/or diminishing at the Provincial/regional level. Where the management unit is important in maintaining or improving habitat for these species, they will be included as selected wildlife species.

3. **Area (ha):** Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

4. Enter the area (in hectares) of habitat for each selected wildlife specie at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy.
1  MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _______________________
2  PLAN PERIOD: ______ TO ______
3  
4  FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit
5  
6  | Forest Unit | Available Harvest Area (ha) |
7  |              | <Year 0> | <Year 20> | <Year 40> | <Year 60> | <Year 80> | <Year 100> |
8  |              |          |          |          |          |          |           |
9  | Total        |          |          |          |          |          |           |
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit

This table summarizes the available harvest area (i.e., for a ten year period) by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest area over time resulting from the management strategy. The table will be supported by a series of graphs (in the supplementary documentation) which depict the same information.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name and plan period.
2. **Forest Unit:** Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-3.
3. **Available Harvest Area (ha):** Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.
4. Enter the available harvest area for the ten year period (in hectares) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy.
5. Enter all totals as required.
### MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________

### PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO ________

### FMP-10:  Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species Group</th>
<th>Available Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-10: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group

This table summarizes the estimated available harvest volume (i.e., for a ten year period) by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest volume over time resulting from the management strategy. The table will be supported by a series of graphs (in the supplementary documentation) which depict the same information.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Species Group:

Enter the species group (e.g., spruce/pine/fir, white/red pine, dense hardwood). This is normally the same as the species groups used in forest modelling.

Available Harvest Volume (m3):

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest volume for the ten year period (in cubic metres) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy.

Enter all totals as required.
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

1. MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________
2. PLAN PERIOD: ______ TO ________

3. FMP-11: Projected Operations, Revenues and Expenditures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Available Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Available Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
<th>Regeneration Area (ha)</th>
<th>Tending Area (ha)</th>
<th>Revenue ($000's)</th>
<th>Silvicultural Expenditure ($000's)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hardwood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.

Copie à des fins d’archivage. Veuillez consulter l’éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
**FMP-11: Projected Operations, Revenues and Expenditures**

This table summarizes the projected available harvest area, available harvest volume, renewal area, tending area and revenue and expenditures for the ten year plan period by forest unit. The source of information for this table is the model output that represents the management strategy.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name and plan period.
2. **Forest Unit:** Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-3.
3. **Available Harvest Area (ha):** Enter the available harvest area (in hectares) for the ten year plan period as projected during the modelling of the management strategy.
4. **Available Harvest Volume (m³):** Enter the available harvest volume (net merchantable m³), by conifer and hardwood for the ten year plan period, as projected during the modelling of the management strategy.
5. **Regeneration Area (ha):** Enter the area (in hectares) to receive regeneration treatments for the ten year plan period, as projected during the modelling of management strategy.
6. **Tending Area (ha):** Enter the area (in hectares) to receive tending treatments for the ten year plan period, as projected during the modelling of management strategy.
7. **Revenue ($000’s):** Enter the projected Crown and Trust Fund revenue (in thousands of dollars) over the ten year plan period from Crown and area charge payments.
8. **Silvicultural Expenditures:** Enter the projected Trust Fund expenditures (in thousands of dollars) over the ten year plan period related to silviculture.

Enter all totals as required.
**PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ________________________
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** _______ TO _______

4. **FMP-12: Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size Class (ha)</th>
<th>Frequency of Forest Disturbances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 - 200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 - 500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 - 1000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001 - 5000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5001 - 10000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-12: Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances

This table summarizes the frequency distribution of forest disturbances. Its purpose is to compare the frequency distribution of forest disturbances sizes at the plan start and at plan end to the template for frequency distribution as established during the planning process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Frequency of Forest Disturbances:

Enter the frequency of forest disturbances by size class.

Number/Percent:

Enter the number and percent of forest disturbances for the plan start and projected plan end by size class. Enter the frequency (percent) by size class that represents the template as determined during the planning process.

Plan Start:

Enter the frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the start of the plan period.

Projected Plan End:

Enter the projected frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the end of the plan period.

Template:

Enter the template frequency (percent) by size class of forest disturbances as established during the planning process.

Enter all totals as required.
1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________
2 PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO ________
3
4 FMP-13: Assessment of Objective Achievement
5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Objective</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Plan Start Level</th>
<th>Desirable Level</th>
<th>Target (how much, when)</th>
<th>Achievement at Target Year</th>
<th>Short (10 years)</th>
<th>Medium (20 years)</th>
<th>Long (100 years)</th>
<th>Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quantitative Objectives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualitative Objectives</td>
<td>Assessment:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-13: Assessment of Objective Achievement

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators and target information and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and the plan period.

Management Objective:
Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

Indicator:
Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets and projections.

Plan Start Level:
Enter the plan start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for a ten year plan period (e.g., available harvest volume).

Desirable Level:
Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Target:
Enter the target level for the indicator and the year the target will be achieved. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Management Strategy – Projections
Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the management strategy, for the target year and for the short, medium and long term.

Assessment:
Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the plan start, desirable and target levels as well as the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:
Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.
### FMP-14: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AOC or AOC Group Identifier</th>
<th>Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value</th>
<th>Individual or Group AOC</th>
<th>Operational Prescription</th>
<th>SGR Code</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Exception</th>
<th>Objection</th>
<th>Roads</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary or Branch Road Crossing</th>
<th>Conditions on Operational Roads</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-14: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

This table summarizes the prescriptions for areas identified as areas of concern (AOC). Each table entry represents either a group of areas of concern with a common prescription, or an individual area of concern with a unique prescription. The source information for this table is contained in an implementation manual or in the supplementary documentation forms for area of concern prescriptions (see forest management planning manual, Appendix VIII).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

AOC or AOC Group Identifier:
Enter the code by which an area of concern prescription can be identified on the operations maps and in the area of concern supplementary documentation for individual or groups of AOCs.

Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value:
Briefly describe the features, land uses or values for which an AOC prescription has been prepared.

Individual or Group AOC
Note in the table whether the prescription is “Individual” or “Group”.

Operational Prescription:
Enter a brief description of the area of concern prescription including any constraints on harvest, renewal and tending operations.

SGR Code:
Enter the related silvicultural ground rule code (or codes) where normal operations are permitted (e.g., timing restrictions only).

Source:
Enter source of prescription, if applicable, including the title of the implementation guide and page number from which the prescription specific direction or recommendation is located.

Exception:
Where an area of concern prescription differs from specific direction or from a recommendation in the appropriate guide/manual, the prescription will be considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.

Objection:
If there is a public concern expressed about a prescription for an area of concern place “Yes” in the column.

Roads:
Primary or Branch Road Crossing: Indicate with “Yes” if there is a road crossing.
Conditions on Operational Roads: Indicate with a “Yes” if there are conditions.

Note: Where the Roads columns indicate a “Yes”, additional information is provided in FMP-23.
**PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ________________________  [  ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** ________ TO ________  [  ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-15: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Harvest Area**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Available Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class</th>
<th>Projected Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Forecast Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Planned Harvest Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage of Management Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-15: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Harvest Area

This table summarizes the level of forecast and planned harvest area as well as the available harvest area by forest unit for comparison. The source of information for this table is the management strategy and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-3.

Available Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the ten-year available harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit.

Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:
Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

Projected Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the ten-year projected area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the projected area by stage of management and age class. The projected area must agree with the available harvest area by forest unit.

Forecast Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the forecast (10-year) harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the forecast harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Enter subtotal by forest unit and by stage of management where applicable.

Planned Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the Planned (5-year) harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the forecast harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Enter subtotal by forest unit and by stage of management, if applicable.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

1. MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________   [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
2. PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO _____________   [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

#### FMP-16: Planned Clearcuts (5-year)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistics</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Planned Clearcuts &lt;= 260 ha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Planned Clearcuts &gt; 260 ha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total for all Planned Clearcuts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Planned Clearcuts <= 260 ha**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location ID</th>
<th>Area of Planned Clearcut (ha)</th>
<th>Planned Harvest Area This Term (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtotal

**Planned Clearcuts > 260 ha**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location ID</th>
<th>Area of Planned Clearcut (ha)</th>
<th>Planned Harvest Area This Term (ha)</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtotal

**Total**
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-16: Planned Clearcuts (5-year)

This table provides planned clearcut statistics and a list of all planned clearcuts for the five year term. A rationale for planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha is also included. The definition of clearcut in the applicable forest management guide (i.e., temporal and spatial standards) is to be used when determining the boundaries and area (ha) of planned clearcuts for the purpose of completing this table.

It is important to note that “planned clearcuts” includes planned harvest area (FMP-15) for those forest units managed using the clearcut silvicultural system and will often include area harvested in previous plan periods. Area figures included in the table are to be provided as net planned clearcut area and net planned harvest area this term in hectares.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Statistics:

Enter the number and percentage of planned clearcuts as calculated for the plan term for each size class. Provide the total number and percent.

Planned Clearcuts Less Than or Equal to 260 Hectares:

List each planned clearcut by location identifier including the total area and the planned harvest area this term.

Planned Clearcuts Greater Than 260 Hectares:

List each planned clearcut by location identifier including the total area, and the planned harvest area this term. Provide a brief description of the rationale for each planned clearcut greater than 260 hectares.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________    [  ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: __________ TO __________      [  ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

FMP-17:  Forecast of Harvest Volume by Species (10-year)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>10-Year Available Harvest Volume (m$^3$)</th>
<th>10-Year Forecast Harvest Volume (m$^3$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
<td>Hardwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-17: Forecast of Harvest Volume by Species (10-year)

This table summarizes forecast harvest volume and compares forecast harvest volume to the available harvest volume by conifer and hardwood. The source of information for this table is the management strategy and the result of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-3.

Ten Year Available Harvest Volume (m³):
Enter the ten year available harvest volume (in cubic metres) for conifer and hardwood by forest unit. Ensure the available harvest volume matches the harvest volume in the management strategy.

Ten Year Forecast Harvest Volume (m³):

Conifer:
Enter the ten-year forecast conifer volume (in cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Hardwood:
Enter the ten-year forecast hardwood volume (in cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

### PLAN PERIOD: _______ TO ________

---

### FMP-18: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Licensee or Grouping</th>
<th>Planned Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Volume Type</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Volume by Species (m³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Utilized             |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |

| Subtotal             |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |

| Unutilized           |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |

| Subtotal             |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |

| Total                |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
|                      |                           |             |         |         |          |          |          |       |
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-18: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year)

This table summarizes the volumes that are available for harvest from the planned and surplus harvest areas by species and product for the five-year term. Planning teams have the option of summarizing the planned harvest area by licensee (or groupings). The table must summarize volume that will be utilized as well as the volume that will not be utilized.

Complete the table as follows:

Licensee or Grouping (Optional):
List the licensees (or groupings) that are expected to conduct harvesting. Where licensees are not known, groupings (e.g., tendered sale areas) shall be indicated. In the case of overlapping licences, all licensees or groupings should be shown. Where the SFL holder is the only licencee, identify the SFL name.

Planned Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the amount of planned harvest area (in hectares) that is expected to be harvested by the licensees (or groupings). Where overlapping licensees exist, the area may exceed the planned harvest area shown in FMP-16. Where only one licencee is identified, the area must be consistent with the planned harvest area shown in FMP-16.

Volume Type:
For the five-year planned harvest area, identify the volumes expected to be harvested and marketed as Utilized and the available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or unmarketed at roadside as Unutilized. Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the plan does not condone wasteful practices.

Product:
Enter the anticipated product (i.e., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer) where possible.

Volume by Species (m³):
Enter the net merchantable volume (in cubic metres) by species, product, and volume type. If licensee (or grouping) is used, enter this information by licensee (or grouping). If licensee (or grouping) is used, the column totals in licensee (or grouping) must equal the column totals in the utilized and unutilized part.

Utilized/Unutilized:
Enter the total utilized and unutilized volumes by product and species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________    [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
2. PLAN PERIOD: __________ TO __________      [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-19: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Wood Utilization by Mill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mill</th>
<th>Commitment Type</th>
<th>Committed Volume (m³)</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Volume by Species (m³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hardwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. Forecast (10-year)

|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |

Total

B. Planned (5-year)

|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |
|      |                 |                       |      |         |                      |

Total

---

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult the original publisher for current version.

B-86 Forest Management Planning Manual June 2004
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-19: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Wood Utilization by Mill

This table lists the mills and the anticipated volumes each will utilize from the forecast and planned harvest area. Volumes are summarized by species and product type. This table also shows volume commitments to each mill. The source of information for this table is FMP-17 and FMP-18 and a combination of known mill commitments and traditional mill levels previously supplied from the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Mill:
List all mills known to be supplied from the management unit under A. Forecast (10 years) and B. Planned (5 years). If volume is to be made available on the open market, indicate "Open Market" in the list.

Commitment Type:
Enter the type(s) of volume commitment (i.e., supply agreement, memorandum of agreement, minister's directive) that applies to each mill.

Committed Volume:
For each commitment type, enter the total volume committed where applicable.

Year:
(Optional) Where the mill utilization is expected to change during the five-year term (e.g., new mill is expected to begin full production during the five-year term) enter mill utilization by year (e.g., 2000).

Product:
Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) for each mill and year (where possible).

Volume by Species:
Enter the forecast and planned mill utilization volume (m³) by species by mill, year and product type. Ensure the total volume by species in A. Forecast is consistent with harvest volume in FMP-17 (with appropriate modification) and the total volume in B. Planned is consistent with the subtotal utilized planned harvest volume in FMP-18.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### FMP-20: Contingency Area: Harvest Area and Volume

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class</th>
<th>Contingency Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Contingency Harvest Volume (m$^3$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forest Unit Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-20: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume

This table summarizes the contingency harvest area and associated volume. The sources of information for this table are the management strategy and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-3.

Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:
Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

Contingency Harvest Area:
Enter the contingency harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the contingency harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Include subtotal by forest units.

Contingency Harvest Volume:
Conifer:
Enter the conifer volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

Hardwood:
Enter the hardwood volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

Total:
Enter the total volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.
**PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ________________________  [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** __________ TO __________  [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)
3. **FMP-21:** Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Renewal</th>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Harvest</td>
<td>Natural</td>
<td>Harvest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disturbance</td>
<td>Disturbance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regeneration</td>
<td>Total Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural</td>
<td>Total Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed Tree Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARP/HARO/CLAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal Natural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial</td>
<td>Total Supplemental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal Artificial</td>
<td>Total Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial - Retreatment</td>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Retreatment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial - Supplemental</td>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Supplemental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td>Prescribed Burn</td>
<td>High Complexity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slash Pile Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tending**

| Cleaning                  |          |          |          |
|                          | Manual   | Mechanical | Chemical |
|                          | Aerial   | Ground | Ground |
|                          | Prescribed Burn | High Complexity |          |
| **Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting** | Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged) |          |          |
|                          | Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged) |          |          |
| Other                    | Cultivation | Pruning |          |
|                          |          |          |          |
| Total Tending             |           |          |          |
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-21: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations

This table summarizes the area of renewal (regeneration and site preparation) and tending operations that are Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) by disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural) and by treatment method. The source of information for this table is the management strategy, the selection of silviculture operations and the current forest management plan.

Note: There is no requirement to forecast or plan natural regeneration for natural disturbances.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Enter the area (in hectares) for ten year plan period (Forecast) and five year plan term (Planned) by renewal and tending treatments.

Harvest/Natural Disturbance

Forecast/Plan silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance) and enter the area in hectares by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included under the natural disturbance columns.

Renewal

Regeneration:

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with retreatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

Site Preparation:

Enter the area of site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burn, enter the net area only.

Tending

Enter the area of tending by treatment.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
1. MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________    [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
2. PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO ________      [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

FMP-22:  Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Road Construction and Use Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Road or Road Network Identifier</th>
<th>Plan Start Length (km)</th>
<th>Construction (km)</th>
<th>Use Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td>Planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Primary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Branch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.

Copie à des fins d'archivage. Veuillez consulter l'éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
## INSTRUCTIONS

### FMP-22: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Road Construction and Use Management

This table summarizes forecast and planned road construction and use management (maintenance, monitoring, access control and future use management) for all primary and branch roads, and use management for networks of operational roads, which will be constructed during the ten year period. This table is prepared following completion and confirmation of the selection of operations and road planning. The source of information for this table is the roads supplementary documentation forms (i.e., in the format provided by Appendix VII) in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

**Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.**

**Road or Road Network Identifier:**
For each primary and branch road, and each network of operational roads, enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

**Plan Start Length:**
For each primary and branch road, enter the kilometres of existing road at the beginning of the plan period. For new roads, enter "0".

**Construction:**
For each primary and branch road complete the following columns.

- **Forecast:**
  For each primary and branch road, enter the length of forecast construction (10 Year) where applicable.

- **Planned:**
  For each primary and branch road, enter the length of the planned construction (5 year), where applicable.

**Use Management:**
For each primary and branch road, and each network of operational roads, complete the following columns. Note: The use management strategy in this table applies to new construction only. The "Existing Roads Table" provides the use management for existing roads or the existing part of roads to be extended.

- **Maintenance:**
  Provide a brief summary of the maintenance that is likely to occur during the ten-year period.

- **Monitoring:**
  Provide a brief summary of monitoring, including monitoring of watercrossings that is likely to occur during the ten-year period.

- **Access Control:**
  Type: If applicable, enter the type of access control (under the Public Lands Act or any other form of regulation) that is to be established. during the ten-year period.

  Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2006/2007) in which access control is to be established during the ten year period.

- **Future Use Management:**
  Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2011/2012) or five year term (e.g., 2011/2016) in which responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNR.

  Management Intent: Indicate MNR’s management intent (e.g., transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission/abandonment).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
FMP-23: Road Crossings of Areas of Concern

### A. Primary and Branch Roads

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AOC Identifier</th>
<th>Road Identifier</th>
<th>Water Crossing</th>
<th>Planned Location</th>
<th>Planned Conditions on Construction</th>
<th>Acceptable Variations Location</th>
<th>Acceptable Variations Conditions on Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. Operational Roads

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AOC or AOC Group Identifier</th>
<th>Conditions on Locations and Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________    [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

PLAN PERIOD: __________ TO __________      [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-23: Road Crossings of Areas of Concern

This table provides information on locations, conditions and acceptable variations for road crossings of areas of concern. The source of information for this table is the area of concern supplementary documentation forms (i.e., in the format provided by Appendix VIII) in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Part A: Primary and Branch Roads

AOC Identifier: Enter the individual area of concern identifier.

Road Identifier: Enter the road name or other identifier.

Water Crossing: Enter “yes” if the road crosses a stream.

Planned: Location: Enter the location identifier for the 100 m wide crossing location.

Conditions on Construction: Enter conditions (e.g., crossing structure, construction methods, mitigative measures).

Acceptable Variations: Location: Enter acceptable alternative 100 metre crossing location(s) or restrictions on crossing locations within the 1 kilometre wide corridor.

Conditions on Construction: Enter acceptable optional water crossing structures, alternative construction methods, alternative mitigative measures.

Part B: Operational Roads

AOC or AOC Group Identifier: Enter the individual area of concern identifier or the group of AOCs identifier.

Conditions on Locations and Construction: Enter conditions e.g., specified water crossing structures and methods of construction, timing restrictions, marking or flagging requirements, notification requirements.
**PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ____________________**  
   [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2. **PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO _________**  
   [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-24: Forecast of Revenues and Expenditures (10-year)**

### Revenues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Forecast Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
<th>Crown Revenues (000s $)</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A. Regular Harvest</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B. Salvage</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Revenue from Area Charges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Natural Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal Support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Eligible Activities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-24: Forecast of Revenues and Expenditures (10-year)

This table summarizes the forecast of revenues and expenditures to be made by activity and funding source for the ten year plan period. The source of information for this table is the forecast of operations summarized in FMP-17 and FMP-21 and projections of Crown charges.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Revenues:
- Revenues are estimated by destination fund or account. Crown charges, used in the estimation of revenues include the minimum and residual value charges, which are revenues to the Crown, the renewal charges, which is revenue to the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account and the Forestry Futures charge, which is revenue to the Forestry Futures Trust Fund.
- Species: Enter the species to be harvested. The species should match the species listed in FMP-17. Include data for salvage harvest only if it is known a salvage program will be in place during the plan period.
- Forecast Harvest Volume (m³): Enter the total forecast harvest volume by species (in cubic metres) consistent with FMP-17. This volume includes utilized and unutilized volume types. The utilized volume includes volumes to be invoiced as well as undersized volumes.
- Crown Revenues (000s $): Crowns Revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Crown charges (minimum fixed rate and residual value) in effect at the time of plan preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.
- Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $): Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the forest renewal charge in effect at the time of plan preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.
- Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $): Forestry Futures Trust Fund revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Forestry Futures charge in effect at the time of plan preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.
- Revenue from Area Charges: The area charges are estimated by multiplying the area charge in effect at the time of plan preparation ($0.00 for each square kilometre at time of publication) by the area of productive forest under licence.

Expenditures:
- Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.
- Activity: Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.
- Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $): Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.
- Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $): Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:
- Natural Regeneration - Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.
- Artificial Regeneration - Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.)
- Site Preparation - Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).
- Tending - Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged)
- Renewal Support - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).
- Other Eligible Activities - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated)
- Protection - Activities include insect pest control
1. MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________________
2. PLAN PERIOD: __________ TO __________
3. [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
4. [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)
5. FMP-25: Forecast of Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Harvest</th>
<th>Silvicultural Ground Rule</th>
<th>Projected Forest Unit</th>
<th>Area to be Assessed (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvest Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Disturbance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Disturbance Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-25: Forecast of Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year)

This table summarizes the area (in hectares) to be assessed for regeneration success during the ten year period of the plan by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule. The source of information for this table is a record of applicable silvicultural ground rules, harvest and natural disturbance and silvicultural treatments. The amount of area to be assessed for success should be consistent with the level of regeneration success required to meet plan objectives and the management strategy as well as levels of past disturbance (i.e., harvest and natural).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest or natural disturbance.

Harvest/Natural Disturbance:
Forecast assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under the natural disturbance.

Silvicultural Ground Rule:
Enter the silvicultural ground rule (from FMP-5) that best describes the treatments that were implemented. In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was changed, enter only the final SGR implemented.

Projected Forest Unit:
Enter the projected forest unit as described in the silvicultural ground rule (FMP-5).

Area to be Assessed:
Enter the forecast area (hectares) to be assessed and subtotal by forest unit.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS

- Phase-In Provisions .............................................................................................................. 3

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION .............................................................................................................. 4

## 2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS ..................................................................................................... 5

- 2.1 Introduction ................................................................................................................ 5
- 2.2 Amendment Requests ................................................................................................ 6
  - 2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments .......... 6
- 2.3 Amendment Documentation ...................................................................................... 7
- 2.4 Administrative Amendments .................................................................................... 7
- 2.5 Minor Amendments ................................................................................................... 8
  - 2.5.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval .......................................... 8
- 2.6 Major Amendments .................................................................................................... 8
  - 2.6.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval .......................................... 8
- 2.7 Amendment Records and Distribution ..................................................................... 11
- 2.8 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation ....................................... 13
  - 2.8.1 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist ............................. 13
  - 2.8.2 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ........................... 13
  - 2.8.3 Road Crossings of Areas of Concern ............................................................... 14
    - 2.8.3.1 Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions ............................................. 14
    - 2.8.3.2 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values .. 14
    - Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams........................................................... 14
    - Other Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values 14

## 3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS ................................................................................................... 16

- 3.1 Introduction .............................................................................................................. 16
- 3.2 Planning Proposal .................................................................................................... 16
- 3.3 Preparation of a Contingency Plan ........................................................................... 17
  - 3.3.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan ............................................ 18
  - 3.3.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan ........................................ 18
  - 3.3.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules ................................. 19
  - 3.3.4 Unscheduled Plan Renewal .............................................................................. 19
- 3.4 Submission, Review and Approval .......................................................................... 20
- 3.5 Contingency Plan Records and Distribution ............................................................ 20

## 4.0 UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ......................................................... 22

- 4.1 Introduction .............................................................................................................. 22
- 4.2 Unscheduled Plan Renewal as a Result of Year Three Management Unit Annual Report ................................................................. 22
- 4.3 Early Plan Renewal ................................................................................................... 22
  - 4.3.1 Introduction ...................................................................................................... 22
  - 4.3.2 Proposal for Early Plan Renewal ..................................................................... 22
  - 4.3.3 MNR Regional Director Review and Approval .............................................. 23
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWAL

5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..................................................................................................................24

6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .................................................................................................................................................................................................25
6.1 General .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................25
6.1.1 Public Notices .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................25
6.1.2 French Language Services Act .................................................................................................................................................................................................25
6.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights .................................................................................................................................................................................................26
6.1.4 Issue Resolution .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................26
6.2 Minor Amendments .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................26
6.2.1 Public Notice Requirements .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................26
6.2.2 Information and Maps Available .................................................................................................................................................................................................27
6.3 Major Amendments .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................27
6.3.1 General .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................27
6.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .................................................................................................................................................................................................27
6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................28
6.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................28
6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of Major Amendment .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................29
6.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................29
6.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................29
6.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................29
6.4 Contingency Plans .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................31
6.4.1 General .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................31
6.4.2 Contingency Plan Inspection .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................31
6.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................31
6.4.2.2 Information and Maps Available .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................32
6.4.3 Additional Consultation .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................32

7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................33
7.1 Introduction .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................33
7.2 Minor Amendments .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................33
7.3 Major Amendments .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................33
7.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................33
7.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of Approved Major Amendment .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................34
7.4 Contingency Plans .................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................................34

LIST OF FIGURES

38 Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page ................9
39 Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page .........................10
40 Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page .........................12
41 Figure C-4: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page .........................21
This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans and contingency plans, contingency plans, and unscheduled and early renewals of forest management plans.

Phase-In Provisions

For Part C, Section 2.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. For plan amendments categorized by the MNR District Manager prior to the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September, 1996. For plan amendments categorized by the MNR District Manager after the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, to the extent reasonably possible, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*. However, table formats should remain consistent with the existing approved forest management plan. The plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with concurrence of the MNR District Manager, will implement the phase-in provisions in a reasonable and practical manner. Phase-in provisions will be documented in the amendment request.

For Part C, Section 3.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a planning proposal for a contingency plan has been provided to the Ministry of the Environment for endorsement prior to the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September, 1996. For contingency plans proposed after the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 3.0 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

For Part C, Section 6.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a plan amendment or a contingency plan is prepared according to the requirements of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part C, Section 6.0 will apply.

For Part C, Section 7.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a plan amendment or a contingency plan is prepared according to the requirements of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part C, Section 7.0 will apply.
1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual describes the requirements for the preparation of amendments to forest management plans and contingency plans, contingency plans, and unscheduled and early renewals of forest management plans.

Section 2.0 describes the requirements for the preparation of plan amendments and contingency plans. Section 3.0 describes the requirements for the preparation of contingency plans. Section 4.0 describes the requirements for unscheduled and early renewal of forest management plans. Section 5.0 describes the requirements when there is a delay in approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term.

Section 6.0 describes the requirements for public consultation in the preparation of plan amendments and contingency plans. Section 7.0 describes the requirements for Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of plan amendments and contingency plans.
2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS

2.1 Introduction

This section describes the planning requirements for any change to an approved forest management plan or contingency plan. For any change to a forest management plan or contingency plan, an amendment will be prepared. An amendment to a forest management plan must be consistent with the long-term management direction for the management unit, and an amendment to a contingency plan must be consistent with the planning proposal for the contingency plan previously endorsed by the Ministry of the Environment.

Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement. Therefore, three categories of amendments are provided: administrative, minor, and major. For any amendment, the planning requirements will depend on the nature of the proposed operations, but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required if the operations were proposed in the preparation of a new forest management plan. However, the MNR review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, will differ depending upon the category of amendment.

The amendment process involves:

(a) submission of a request for an amendment;
(b) review of the request by the MNR District Manager, with advice from the local citizens committee;
(c) acceptance or denial of the request;
(d) if acceptance, assignment of a category to the amendment;
(e) completion of all applicable planning and documentation requirements, including public consultation and Aboriginal involvement;
(f) MNR review and approval of the amendment; and
(g) record-keeping and distribution of amendments.

All applicable planning and documentation requirements for a forest management plan will apply to the preparation of a plan amendment. All amendments will be certified by the plan author and the MNR District Manager, and when approved, will be filed in the same locations as the approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.6). In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B.
If applicable, a List of Exceptions in the format of Part B, Figure B-2 will be prepared and attached to the title, certification and approval page(s), to identify prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.

2.2 Amendment Requests

Any person can initiate the planning process for an amendment by submitting a written request to the MNR District Manager. The amendment request will contain the following information:

(a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;
(b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its significance; and
(c) if new operations are proposed:
   (i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of the previously approved operations in the forest management plan or contingency plan which will be changed by the proposed amendment; and
   (ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed operations, including public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, based on the planning requirements for similar operations in a forest management plan.

2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments

The MNR District Manager, in consultation with the local citizens committee, will decide if preparation of the proposed amendment should proceed, and the appropriate categorization of the amendment as administrative, minor or major. The MNR District Manager’s decision, at a minimum will consider the following factors:

(a) the amount of planning and public consultation and Aboriginal involvement required for the proposed amendment;
(b) whether there are legitimate time constraints which must be met for reasons of public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and necessity;
(c) the number of similar requests;
(d) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the request on natural resource features, land uses and values potentially affected; and
(e) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations.

When the MNR District Manager has made a preliminary determination that an amendment should be categorized as administrative, and the local citizens committee is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager may instead consult the chair of the local citizens committee, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.
If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural disturbance, the MNR District Manager, in consultation with the local citizens committee, will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood. If the local citizens committee is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager may consult the chair of the local citizens committee, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

The decision on the amendment request, and the appropriate category of amendment will normally be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The MNR District Manager will prepare a written decision, and if the local citizens committee disagrees with the categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager will record the nature of that disagreement in that written decision.

2.3 Amendment Documentation

All applicable planning and documentation requirements for a forest management plan (Parts A and B) will apply to the preparation of an amendment to a forest management plan or contingency plan. Documentation requirements for each amendment will include:

(a) the title, certification and approval page;
(b) the amendment request;
(c) the amended text and tables, if applicable, for the changes to the approved forest management plan;
(d) a map(s) of the area affected by the amendment, if applicable;
(e) all documentation associated with the planning of operations, if applicable, including any supplementary documentation;
(f) comments from the local citizens committee, if applicable; and
(g) the results of the formal public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, if applicable.

2.4 Administrative Amendments

If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that a proposed amendment should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is administrative, the necessary planning will be completed and the amendment will be certified by the plan author. The administrative amendment will be reviewed by appropriate MNR staff. Upon satisfactory completion of any changes as a result of the MNR review, the amendment will be certified and approved by the MNR District Manager or the MNR Area Supervisor. There are no formal public consultation requirements for the preparation of an administrative amendment.
When the cumulative effect of administrative amendments requires tables in the forest management plan to be updated, the applicable tables will be updated annually and will be filed with each copy of the approved forest management plan.

Figure C-1 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an administrative amendment.

### 2.5 Minor Amendments

#### 2.5.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval

If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the amendment will be prepared in consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations and certified by the plan author. The minor amendment will be reviewed by appropriate MNR staff. Upon completion of any required changes, the minor amendment will be re-submitted. The MNR District Manager will then certify and approve the minor amendment.

An opportunity for inspection of the MNR-approved minor amendment by the public and Aboriginal communities will be provided (Part C, Sections 6.2 and 7.2). If inspection of the MNR-approved amendment results in no significant concerns, implementation of the minor amendment will proceed.

### 2.6 Major Amendments

#### 2.6.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval

If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the amendment will be prepared with the participation of interested and affected persons and organizations.

As described in Part C, Sections 6.3 and 7.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment.

After Stage One of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement during the preparation of the proposed major amendment, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.2 and 7.3.1, the required documentation for the major amendment will be produced. The major amendment is submitted to MNR for review by appropriate MNR staff, including MNR regional staff, in accordance with the same procedure as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.4), with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.
Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

I/We hereby confirm that this Administrative Amendment has been prepared in accordance
with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and is consistent with the
approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: ____________________________   __________________
[date]

I hereby certify that this Administrative Amendment has been developed in accordance with
the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. seal]  [Plan Author]    [date]

I approve this Administrative Amendment for implementation and certify that it has been
prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual,
relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal
people. I also certify that this Administrative Amendment has been prepared in accordance
with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this
Administrative Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or
recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached
List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

[date]

[MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor]
Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

I/We hereby confirm that this Minor Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: ____________________________   __________________
[date]

I hereby certify that this Minor Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. seal]  [Plan Author]      [date]

I approve this Minor Amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Minor Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Minor Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

[MNR District Manager]       [date]

Concurrence by (if required):

[MNR Regional Director]       [date]
After the MNR review and satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major amendment, the MNR District Manager will certify and recommend the major amendment for approval by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with the same procedure as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5), with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances. After approval by the MNR Regional Director, the MNR-approved major amendment is available for inspection at Stage Two of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.3 and 7.3.2.

In addition to the documentation requirements described in Part C, Section 2.3, a brief description of how MNR’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the major amendment must also be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing note.

Figure C-3 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a major amendment.

2.7 Amendment Records and Distribution

An up-to-date list of all amendment requests will be maintained at the front of each copy of the approved forest management plan at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. The list will include:

(a) amendment request number;
(b) amendment request date;
(c) reason for the amendment;
(d) District Manager decision on amendment request, including category; and
(e) amendment approval date.

All approved amendments will form part of the approved forest management plan. A copy of each approved amendment will be filed with each copy of the approved forest management plan.

Major and minor amendments will be filed immediately upon approval with the copy of the approved forest management plan at each of the following locations:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office;
(d) MNR Forest Management Branch; and
(e) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

Administrative amendments will be filed immediately upon approval with each copy of the forest management plan at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. By April 30 of each year, the MNR district office will forward a
Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _______ to March 31, _______

I/We hereby confirm that this Major Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: ____________________________   __________________
[date]

I hereby certify that this Major Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. seal]  [Plan Author]      [date]

I recommend that this Major Amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Major Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Major Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNR District Manager]         [date]

Approved by:

[MNR Regional Director]         [date]
copy of each approved administrative amendment for the year, and an updated list of
amendment requests and approved amendments, to each of the other three locations, for filing
with the copy of the approved forest management plan.

2.8 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

2.8.1 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist

During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that a mapped natural
resource feature or value no longer exists, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest
Information Manual. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of
concern, or the road crossing location and/or conditions, in the forest management plan will
no longer apply. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. Updated
information will be documented and provided to MNR as described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.4.

2.8.2 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

During the implementation of operations, a previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural
resource feature or value may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an
area of concern is available in the forest management plan, that operational prescription will
be implemented in the location of the feature or value with no requirement for an amendment
to the forest management plan. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern
is not available in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan
will be required. As described in Part C, Section 2.2, the MNR District Manager should make
a decision on the categorization of the amendment which facilitates the expeditious planning,
approval and implementation of operations.

During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a natural resource feature or
value in an area of operations may be different than the mapped location in the forest
management plan. As described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.1, the operational prescription for the
area of concern in the forest management plan will be implemented in the actual location of
the feature or value, with no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan.

During the implementation of operations, increased protection (e.g., wider reserves) may be
provided to the operational prescription for an area of concern from the approved forest
management plan. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required.

In each of the situations described in this section where no amendment to the forest
management plan will be required, updated information will be documented and provided to
MNR as described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.4.
2.8.3 Road Crossings of Areas of Concern

2.8.3.1 Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions

If a change to a crossing location or conditions on construction is desired for a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern, and the change is consistent with the acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location or conditions on construction identified in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. Updated information on the crossing location or conditions on construction will be documented and provided to MNR as described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.4.

If a change to a crossing location or conditions on construction is desired, and the change is not consistent with the acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location or conditions on construction identified in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required. As described in Part C, Section 2.2, the MNR District Manager will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of operations.

If a change to the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of a crossing is desired for an operational road crossing of an area of concern, an amendment is required.

2.8.3.2 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values

Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams

During the construction of a road, an unmapped stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the mapped location in the forest management plan and annual work schedule. In these situations, a revision to the annual work schedule will be required. In the revision, a new 100 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified and reviewed, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.1.2. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required.

Other Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values

During the construction of a road, a previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural resource feature or value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a natural resource feature or value may be different than the mapped location in the forest management plan.

If a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern for such features or values is necessary, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required. In the amendment, a new 100 metre wide location of the area of concern crossing, and/or new conditions on construction, will be identified, in accordance with the planning requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.
If an operational road crossing of an area of concern for such a feature or value is necessary, and conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossing are available in the forest management plan and are applicable to the area of concern, those conditions will apply. In such a situation, an amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. If conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossing are not available in the forest management plan, or the conditions in the forest management plan are not applicable, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required. As described in Part C, Section 2.2.1, the MNR District Manager will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of operations.
3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS

3.1 Introduction

A contingency plan is an interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. These circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.3. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the renewed forest management plan.

When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the MNR District Manager will notify the MNR Regional Director, and the Manager of MNR’s Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch, Main Office. Prior to preparing the contingency plan, a planning proposal must be endorsed by the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

3.2 Planning Proposal

To initiate the planning process for a contingency plan, a planning proposal for a contingency plan will be prepared by the plan author, in conjunction with staff from the MNR district and regional office and MNR’s Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch, Main Office.

The planning proposal will include:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the need for the contingency plan;
(c) the term of the contingency plan;
(d) an outline of the content for the contingency plan and the supplementary documentation;
(e) a description of the consultation that has occurred to date, and provisions for additional public consultation and Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of the contingency plan;
(f) the schedule for the production, review and approval of the contingency plan;
(g) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee;
(h) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;
(i) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if any;
(j) the effect on the planning schedule for the forest management plan;
(k) the coordination of the interrelationships between the forest management plan, the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNR Regional Director, it will be submitted to the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for endorsement. The planning proposal will be accompanied by a covering letter from the MNR Regional Director, including the requested timeframe for endorsement, to the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

The planning proposal will be submitted to the Director of the Environmental Assessment Branch, Ministry of the Environment, within a sufficient time period to permit the preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan by the required implementation date. The time period will depend on the circumstances surrounding the need for the contingency plan.

The Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch may require the MNR Regional Director to submit additional information related to the planning proposal prior to determining whether to endorse the planning proposal. The Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch will normally make a decision on endorsement of the planning proposal within 30 days of receipt of all necessary information.

Upon an endorsement of the planning proposal by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, production of the contingency plan will proceed.

### 3.3 Preparation of a Contingency Plan

The preparation of a contingency plan will proceed in accordance with the planning proposal endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment. As in the case of a forest management plan, the contingency plan will be prepared by the plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a planning team and a local citizens committee.

The contingency plan will normally be prepared for a minimum term of 12 months. The applicable planning requirements for a forest management plan will apply to the preparation of the contingency plan. In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the endorsed planning proposal, contingency plan documentation will include:

- a title, certification and approval page;
- the planning proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;
- comments from the local citizens committee; and
- the results of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement.
A brief description of how MNR’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the contingency plan must be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing note.

3.3.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan

For a contingency plan that is required when there is a delay in the approval of a forest management plan, the first four stages of Phase I of public consultation, and the applicable Aboriginal involvement, will have been completed. The contingency plan will normally incorporate non-contentious operations that will have been planned and reviewed during the preparation and review of the draft forest management plan. Comments received from the public and Aboriginal communities during the review of the draft forest management plan will assist in identifying non-contentious operations.

This type of contingency plan is a short-term plan that enables the implementation of operations until the forest management plan is approved for implementation. The forest operations for the contingency plan will normally be supplied by the annual work schedule, and any additional information identified in the approved and endorsed planning proposal.

3.3.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan

For a contingency plan that is required when there is a delay that prevents a draft forest management plan from being prepared by the scheduled review date, additional planning, documentation, and public consultation and Aboriginal involvement are required. In particular, the planning of operations for the contingency plan will be undertaken in accordance with the planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment before the MNR Regional Director’s endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, the contingency plan will include operations from the current approved forest management plan, where possible, including contingency area. Additional operations will be planned in manner that is consistent with the long-term management direction (or strategic direction) of the current approved forest management plan.

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment after the MNR Regional Director’s endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, operations will be planned in manner that is consistent with that long-term management direction.
3.3.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules

A forest management plan will be renewed at least every 10 years. Adjustments to a forest management planning schedule for a management unit may be required to even out the number of plans that are renewed in any particular year, or to accommodate management unit amalgamations.

When the schedule for forest management plan renewal is changed to even out the number of plans that are renewed in any particular year, a contingency plan will be required. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between expiry of the current approved forest management plan and the scheduled renewal of the forest management plan for the management unit.

When there is a scheduled amalgamation of management units that involves a management unit for which the forest management plan will expire before the scheduled amalgamation, a contingency plan will be required for that management unit. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current forest management plan and the scheduled implementation of the forest management plan for the amalgamated management unit.

Operations will be planned in a manner that is consistent with the long-term management direction (or strategic direction) of the current approved forest management plan. The planning of operations for the contingency plan will be undertaken in accordance with the planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

3.3.4 Unscheduled Plan Renewal

If the MNR Regional Director endorses a year three management unit annual report that does not support the continuation of the long-term management direction of the current approved forest management plan (Part E, Sections 3.0 and 5.2), an unscheduled plan renewal will be required. A contingency plan will be required to permit the implementation of operations for the period of time required to prepare and approve the forest management plan.

The areas of operations, including roads, for the term of the contingency plan will be selected from the current approved forest management plan, including:

(a) approved areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
(b) contingency area;
(c) proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending for the second five-year term;
(d) optional harvest areas; and
(e) approved roads.

The planning of operations for the contingency plan will be undertaken in accordance with the planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.
3.4 Submission, Review and Approval

The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by appropriate MNR staff, including regional staff, in a manner similar to the review of a forest management plan (Part A, Sections 1.4), as described in the endorsed planning proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNR review, the contingency plan will be certified and recommended for approval by the MNR District Manager in accordance with the same requirements as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5.4). When approved by the MNR Regional Director, the contingency plan will be filed in the same locations as the approved forest management plan.

Figure C-4 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency plan.

The requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement for contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 6.4 and 7.4.

3.5 Contingency Plan Records and Distribution

The approved contingency plan will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, MNR’s Forest Management Branch, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR for the duration of the contingency plan.

After approval and inspection of the contingency plan, MNR will provide the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of Environment with a summary of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement for the contingency plan, including the date(s) of notice(s), a summary of the comments received, and a summary of MNR’s responses to those comments.
Figure C-4: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page

CONTINGENCY PLAN

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author's organization]

for the period from _______ to _______

I hereby certify that I have prepared this Contingency Plan, including the Silvicultural Ground Rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. seal]  [Plan Author]  [date]

Submitted by:  [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]  [date]

I recommend that this Contingency Plan be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Contingency Plan has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Contingency Plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNR District Manager]  [date]

Approved by:

[MNR Regional Director]  [date]
4.0  UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS

4.1  Introduction

A forest management plan will be renewed at least every 10 years. There may be circumstances during the term of an approved forest management plan that results in an unscheduled plan renewal. There may also be circumstances during the term of a forest management plan where an early plan renewal may be necessary.

4.2  Unscheduled Plan Renewal as a Result of Year Three Management Unit Annual Report

If the MNR Regional Director endorses a year three management unit annual report that does not support the continuation of the long-term management direction of the current approved forest management plan (Part E, Sections 3.0 and 5.2), an unscheduled plan renewal will be required. Following this endorsement, the MNR Regional Director will notify the MNR’s Forest Management Branch, the MNR District Manager, the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment and the sustainable forest licensee that the long-term management direction is no longer valid for the second five-year term and that a new forest management plan must be prepared. The notification will also identify that a contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 3.0.

4.3  Early Plan Renewal

4.3.1  Introduction

At any time during the implementation of a forest management plan, there may be other circumstances than that described in Part C, Section 4.2 which merit the renewal of the forest management plan prior to the scheduled renewal date.

If the MNR District Manager and the sustainable forest licensee agree that an early plan renewal has merit, a proposal will be prepared.

4.3.2  Proposal for Early Plan Renewal

The plan author, in conjunction with staff from the MNR district and MNR regional office, will prepare a proposal for an early plan renewal. The proposal will be submitted to the MNR Regional Director within a sufficient time period to permit the preparation, review and approval of the forest management plan by the proposed early renewal date.
The proposal will contain the following information:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the period for the current approved forest management plan and the period proposed for the early plan renewal;
(c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the early plan renewal;
(d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment to the current approved forest management plan, a contingency plan); and
(e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee.

A senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, if applicable, will sign the proposal and submit it to the MNR District Manager. The MNR District Manager will review the proposal and provide recommendations to the MNR Regional Director.

4.3.3 MNR Regional Director Review and Approval

The MNR Regional Director will review the proposal for early plan renewal and make the determination whether to proceed with an early plan renewal.

Upon approval to proceed with an early plan renewal, the MNR Regional Director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Manager, Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch.
5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

When there is a delay in the approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term, the first annual work schedule for the second five-year term will be prepared from the approved operations and contingency area in the current approved forest management plan. An amendment to the forest management plan will be required in order to include contingency area in the annual work schedule (Part A, Section 1.3.3.2).

When the operations for the second five-year term are approved for implementation, the annual work schedule will be revised in accordance with Part D, Section 3.4, if any approved operations from the second five-year term will be scheduled within the annual work schedule.
6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

6.1 General

6.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for minor and major amendments, and contingency plans. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, normally by the MNR District Manager. Media notices will be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each public notice will contain the following information:

(a) a statement of the purpose of the public consultation opportunity;
(b) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
(c) a description of the subject matter of the public consultation opportunity;
(d) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) that information and maps are available, including the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours, and during non-business hours by arranging an appointment with the MNR District Manager; and
(e) the name of a contact person(s).

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation for minor amendments, major amendments and contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 6.2, 6.3 and 6.4.

6.1.2 French Language Services Act

The French Language Services Act, as amended from time to time, will govern the public consultation requirements for minor amendments, major amendments and contingency plans in designated areas under the act. The French Language Services Act requirements for public consultation for forest management plans (Part A, Section 3.3.2.4) will apply, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.
6.1.3 **Environmental Bill of Rights**

Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation for a major amendment or a contingency plan.

For a major amendment, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at Stage One of public consultation. At Stage Two, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry.

For a contingency plan, at a minimum, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued to advise the public of an opportunity to inspect the MNR-approved contingency plan (Part C, Section 6.4).

MNR’s guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

6.1.4 **Issue Resolution**

If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, or a contingency plan, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be compressed).

6.2 **Minor Amendments**

One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the minor amendment has been approved by the MNR District Manager, and to invite the public to view the approved minor amendment, and identify any concerns.

6.2.1 **Public Notice Requirements**

A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to implementation of the minor amendment. The direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by, the operations which are proposed in the minor amendment.
In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
(b) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are raised;
(c) a statement that the minor amendment will receive final MNR approval by a specified date if no concerns are raised;
(d) a brief explanation of how comments which are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act; and
(e) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).

6.2.2 Information and Maps Available

The MNR-approved minor amendment and supplementary documentation will be available for viewing and comment at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, for a period of at least 15 days.

6.3 Major Amendments

6.3.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations, which are proposed in the major amendment.

6.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major amendment, including:
   (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
(ii) the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and
proposed road locations/conditions; and
(iii) the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations; and
(b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in
planning.

6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the
notice will contain:

(a) the schedule for the remaining formal public consultation opportunity;
(b) the names of the plan author and other members of the planning team, and
information concerning how to contact the plan author, the MNR District
Manager and a representative of the local citizens committee;
(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day
review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will
be provided);
(d) a brief explanation of how comments which are received will be handled under
relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy
Act; and
(e) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).

A supplemental notice(s) will be issued approximately 7 days in advance to remind the public
of the upcoming information centre. This notice will normally be issued by MNR; however,
the sustainable forest licensee and/or the local citizens committee may provide this notice.
The local citizens committee will be consulted on the appropriate format for the supplemental
notice (e.g., local radio or television announcement, flyers, etc.).

The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the
local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately
identified.

6.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available

Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be
comparable to the information and maps available at Phase II: Stage One for a forest
management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.4), with whatever modifications MNR considers
necessary in the circumstances.
6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of Major Amendment

Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the major amendment by the MNR Regional Director. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the major amendment has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment.

6.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the MNR-approved major amendment is also available for inspection at the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;

(b) the names of the plan author and other members of the planning team, and information concerning how to contact the plan author, the MNR District Manager and a representative of the local citizens committee; and

(c) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the major amendment, and that a response to the request will normally be provided by the Minister of the Environment after the completion of the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2).

6.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available

The MNR-approved major amendment will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

6.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

The opportunity to make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment applies to major amendments. For any request for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in a major amendment, the following process will apply:

1. There is a 30-day period following the public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment, for any person to make a written request to the
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWAL

Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the major amendment.

2. The Minister of the Environment shall notify the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to the Minister of the Environment on the request.

3. The Minister of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 30 days of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch may require MNR to submit additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

4. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request within 30 days of receipt of all necessary information, the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe for a decision to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person requesting an individual environmental assessment.

5. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

6. The Minister of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Minister does not require an individual environmental assessment, the Minister shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that the request has been denied, with reasons.

7. If the Minister of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment, the Minister of the Environment shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval under the Environmental Assessment Act. The specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are the subject of the individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Minister of the Environment. Where the Minister of the Environment has given written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are not the subject of the individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be
6.4 Contingency Plans

6.4.1 General

The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a contingency plan will be described in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be consistent with the requirements for a forest management plan, and may vary having regard for the extent of public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a contingency plan.

6.4.2 Contingency Plan Inspection

The minimum formal public consultation requirement will be an opportunity to inspect the MNR-approved contingency plan. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the MNR Regional Director has approved the contingency plan, and to invite the public to inspect the approved contingency plan, and to identify any concerns.

6.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to implementation of the contingency plan. The direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by, the operations which are proposed in the contingency plan.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
(b) a statement that the MNR-approved major amendment is also available for inspection at the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;
(c) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are raised;
(d) a statement that the contingency plan will receive final MNR approval by a specified date if no concerns are raised;
(e) a brief explanation of how comments which are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act; and
(f) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).
6.4.2.2 Information and Maps Available

The MNR-approved contingency plan will be available for public inspection and comment at the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR, for a period of at least 15 days.

6.4.3 Additional Consultation

The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for public consultation for the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). The timing and contents of public notices, the recipients of notices and the availability of information and maps will be consistent with the requirements for a forest management plan, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.
7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT

7.1 Introduction

This section describes the consideration of Aboriginal interests, through the involvement of Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of a plan amendment or a contingency plan.

In those cases where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, and contains provisions for a plan amendment or a contingency plan, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

For each notice required for a plan amendment or a contingency plan, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

7.2 Minor Amendments

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 6.2 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

7.3 Major Amendments

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 6.3 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

7.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to provide the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values, and to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.
In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.2, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) the time and location of the special information centre; and
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values and the proposed operations in the major amendment.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately 7 days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

7.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of Approved Major Amendment

The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to provide a final Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values.

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.3 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

7.4 Contingency Plans

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.4 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the planning proposal for the contingency plan includes provisions for an information centre(s), the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1

2

3 PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS ........................................................................................................ 3

4 Phase-in Provisions ......................................................................................................................... 3

5 1.0 INTRODUCTION ...................................................................................................................... 4

6 2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS ....................................................................... 5

7 Silvicultural Ground Rules .............................................................................................................. 5

8 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ............................................................................ 6

9 Annual Work Schedules and Annual Reports ................................................................................. 6

10 3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE ............................................................................................. 8

11 3.1 Introduction ............................................................................................................................ 8

12 3.2 Content Requirements ........................................................................................................... 8

13 3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page .............................................................................. 8

14 3.2.2 Introduction ....................................................................................................................... 10

15 3.2.3 Harvest Area ..................................................................................................................... 10

16 3.2.4 Wood Utilization ............................................................................................................... 11

17 3.2.5 Renewal and Maintenance ............................................................................................... 11

18 3.2.5.1 Renewal Support ........................................................................................................... 11

19 3.2.6 Roads .................................................................................................................................. 12

20 3.2.6.1 Water Crossings ............................................................................................................ 12

21 Annual Work Schedule for the Year Prior to Construction ......................................................... 12

22 Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction .................................................................. 13

23 3.2.6.2 Existing Roads ............................................................................................................... 14

24 3.2.6.3 Aggregates .................................................................................................................... 14

25 3.2.7 Fire Prevention and Preparedness ....................................................................................... 14

26 3.2.8 Revenues and Expenditures ............................................................................................. 15

27 3.2.9 Monitoring and Assessment ............................................................................................ 15

28 3.2.10 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map ........................................................................ 16

29 3.3 MNR Review and Approval .................................................................................................. 16

30 3.4 Revisions ............................................................................................................................... 17

31 3.4.1 Areas of Concern .............................................................................................................. 19

32 3.4.1.1 Operational Prescriptions ........................................................................................... 19

33 3.4.1.2 Water Crossings .......................................................................................................... 19

34 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams ............................................................................. 19

35 Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions ............................................................................ 19

36 3.4.1.3 Other Crossings ............................................................................................................ 20

37 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features or Values ............................... 20

38 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist ....................................................... 20

39 3.4.1.4 Documentation ............................................................................................................. 21

40 3.5 Annual Work Schedule Tables ............................................................................................. 21

41 4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS ............................................................................................................. 36

42 5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS .............................................. 37

43 6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS .................................................................... 39

June 2004

Forest Management Planning Manual

D-1
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

1 6.1 Introduction ............................................................................................................... 39
2 6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program ................................................ 39

7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .................................................................................. 41
4 7.1 General ....................................................................................................................... 41
5 7.1.1 Public Notices .......................................................................................................... 41
6 7.1.2 French Language Services Act ............................................................................... 41
7 7.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights ................................................................................... 41
8 7.2 Annual Work Schedules ........................................................................................... 41
9 7.3 Prescribed Burns ........................................................................................................ 43
10 7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects ................................................................. 43
11 7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs .......................................................................... 44
12 7.5.1 General .................................................................................................................. 44
13 7.5.2 Stage One - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management
14 Program .............................................................................................................................. 44
15 7.5.3 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection ..................................... 45
16 7.5.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment .......... 46
17 7.5.4.1 Issue Resolution .................................................................................................. 46
18 7.5.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment ..................................... 46

8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT ........................................................................ 48
20 8.1 Introduction ............................................................................................................... 48
21 8.2 Annual Work Schedules, Prescribed Burns, and Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide
22 Projects ............................................................................................................................. 48
23 8.3 Insect Pest Management Programs .......................................................................... 48
24 8.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management
25 Program .............................................................................................................................. 48
26 8.3.2 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection ..................................... 49

LIST OF TABLES

31 AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Harvest Area .................................................................... 22
32 AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Wood Utilization ............................................................... 24
33 AWS-3: Annual Schedule of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations .................. 26
34 AWS-4: Annual Schedule of Road Construction and Use Management ....................... 28
35 AWS-5: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed/Reviewed .................. 30
36 AWS-6: Annual Schedule of Revenues And Expenditures ........................................... 32
37 AWS-7: Annual Schedule of Assessment of Regeneration Success ............................... 34

LIST OF FIGURES

41 Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page .................. 9
42 Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page .... 18
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

This part of the manual contains the requirements for the annual scheduling of forest management operations.

Phase-in Provisions

For Part D, Section 2.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part D, Section 2.0 will apply to forest operations prescriptions.

For Part D, Section 3.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, to the extent reasonably possible, annual work schedules will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 3.0. The plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with the concurrence of the MNR District Manager, will implement the requirements of Part D, Section 3.0 in a reasonable and practical manner.

For Part D, Section 4.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part D, Section 4.0 will apply to prescribed burn projects.

For Part D, Section 5.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0 will apply to aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

For Part D, Section 6.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part D, Section 6.0 will apply to insect pest management programs.

For Part D, Section 7.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part D, Section 7.0 will apply to annual work schedules, prescribed burn projects, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs.

For Part D, Section 8.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part D, Section 8.0 will apply to annual work schedules, prescribed burn projects, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs.
1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules, and the detailed project planning required prior to the implementation of forest operations.

The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan and the scheduled operations in the annual work schedule is the forest operations prescription. The requirements for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in Section 2.0.

An annual work schedule is produced each year to guide the implementation of operations. The requirements for the preparation, review, approval and inspection of the annual work schedule are described in Section 3.0.

When prescribed burns or aerial herbicide projects are scheduled in an annual work schedule, additional detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the operational planning requirements for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial herbicide projects.

If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.0. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial insecticide projects.

Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation, and Section 8.0 describes the requirements for Aboriginal involvement, for annual operations.
2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring system.

A forest operations prescription must be developed before operations can commence on a particular site. A forest operations prescription may apply to an individual stand or a group of stands. The complete forest operations prescription for a particular stand (or group of stands) is comprised of a combination of:

(a) the applicable silvicultural ground rule for the stand(s) in the forest management plan(s);
(b) the silvicultural treatments for the stand(s) identified in the list of areas of scheduled forest operations in the applicable annual work schedule(s) and changes appended to the annual work schedule(s); and
(c) the actual silvicultural treatments for the stand(s) as identified in the list of areas of completed forest operations in the applicable annual report(s).

Silvicultural Ground Rules

For most of the areas of operations, the silvicultural ground rules in FMP-5 of the forest management plan are the preliminary forest operations prescriptions. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the silvicultural ground rule for each forest unit - ecosite combination identifies the set of treatments that will most often be used. However, the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the silvicultural ground rule may be used.

In the preparation of the annual work schedule, each preliminary forest operations prescription will be confirmed or changed to reflect the actual forest unit - ecosite combination, based on the information available at that time. If the forest unit - ecosite combination is confirmed, but the preferred silvicultural treatment(s) is not appropriate for the actual site conditions, an acceptable alternative silvicultural treatment(s) will be selected from the silvicultural ground rule. If the actual forest unit - ecosite combination is different from the information in the forest management plan, the appropriate silvicultural ground rule will be identified and an acceptable alternative silvicultural treatment(s) will be selected.

If none of the silvicultural treatments in the existing silvicultural ground rules are applicable, a new silvicultural ground rule will be developed. If a new silvicultural ground rule will be developed, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0.
Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

As described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, operational prescriptions are prepared for areas of concern in a forest management plan, and documented in FMP-14. When operational prescriptions for areas of concern include modified operations that are unique prescriptions developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values, the modified operations describe the forest operations that are permitted in the areas of concern. These modified operations are deemed to satisfy the silvicultural ground rule requirement of the forest operations prescription.

When operational prescriptions for areas of concern include regular operations, or modified operations which are regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), the operational prescriptions for the areas of concern are the preliminary forest operations prescriptions. The requirements for confirmation of, or changes to, the preliminary forest operations prescriptions for Silvicultural Ground Rules will apply to those areas.

Annual Work Schedules and Annual Reports

The results of the confirmation of, or change to, silvicultural treatments will be recorded in the list of areas of scheduled forest operations in the annual work schedule, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Sections 3.2.3 and 3.2.5.

A forest operations prescription must be certified by a registered professional forester, and if elements of the prescription (e.g., for an area of concern) are beyond the standard expertise of a forester, by a suitably qualified person. That certification is provided as part of the certification of an annual work schedule, as described in Part D, Section 3.2.1. In certifying a forest operations prescription, the forester (and other suitably qualified person) is stating that the forest operations that will be carried out are appropriate for the actual site conditions.

During the year, any changes to silvicultural treatments identified in the approved annual work schedule must be consistent with the silvicultural ground rules in the approved forest management plan. Each such change will be appended to each copy of the annual work schedule, with the required certification (i.e., the signature and seal of the registered professional forester). Changes to silvicultural treatments that are not included in the approved forest management plan will require an amendment to the forest management plan. If new areas of operations from the approved forest management plan are added during the year, a revision to the annual work schedule will be required. In the revision to the annual work schedule, the preliminary forest operations prescription from the forest management plan will be confirmed or changed.

The activities scheduled in any given year are normally portrayed on the annual operations maps. The actual silvicultural treatments that were implemented will be reported in the management unit annual reports.
Further direction on the information requirements for forest operations prescriptions is provided in the *Forest Information Manual*. 
3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE

3.1 Introduction

An annual work schedule will be prepared and approved for the management unit before any operations may proceed, and must be consistent with the approved forest management plan. An annual work schedule is required for a one-year period that normally commences on April 1 and always ends on March 31. The annual work schedule will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least three months prior to April 1 for MNR review and approval. An annual work schedule, and any required revisions, must be certified by a registered professional forester.

The annual work schedule lists operations that were previously planned and approved in the forest management plan, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition, there are planning and approval requirements for water crossings.

Responsibility for the preparation of the annual work schedule normally rests with the plan author. If a person other than the plan author produces the document, the plan author must supervise its preparation and certify the document. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an annual work schedule (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the annual work schedule that they prepared.

3.2 Content Requirements

3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page

The first page of the annual work schedule is a title, certification and approval page in the format of Figure D-1. The title, certification and approval page must be signed by the person who prepared the annual work schedule, normally the plan author, the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, where applicable, and the MNR District Manager. A registered professional forester must sign the title, certification and approval page to certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations in the annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and are appropriate for the actual site conditions.
Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE

for the

(NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

[MNR Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author's organization]

for the one-year period from April 1, ____ to March 31, ____

I/We hereby confirm that this annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: ____________________________ [date]

Submitted by: ________________ [date]
(where applicable) Plan Author [or senior official of plan author’s organization, if other than MNR]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

________________  _______________________  ___________
[R.P.F. Seal]  [Plan Author]    [date]

I have read this annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Approved by: _______________________  ____________
[MNR District Manager]  [date]
3.2.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the name of the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee name and licence number, where applicable, the MNR district and region, and the one-year period of the annual work schedule.

The annual work schedule must contain a management unit map, at a scale that will fit a standard page that contains sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit. The map must identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and where applicable, the location of the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

3.2.3 Harvest Area

The areas scheduled for harvest during the year will be identified on the annual operations maps and summarized by forest unit and age class (or stage of management) in AWS-1. The average annual area of harvest will guide the amount of area scheduled for harvest in an annual work schedule. FMP-15 of the forest management plan is the source for this information. In order to provide flexibility for unforeseen circumstances, additional harvest area may be scheduled, and the rationale for the additional harvest area will be documented in the text.

In the annual work schedule for the first year of the forest management plan, the text will describe areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1). In any annual work schedule, the text will describe areas of second-pass harvest operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), and areas of salvage harvest (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1).

All areas scheduled for harvest, and the associated operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part B, FMP-14), will be portrayed on the annual operations maps. Areas of bridging operations, second-pass harvest operations and salvage harvest will each be portrayed separately on the maps.

A description of how stand level residual requirements will be addressed during the implementation of operations will be provided in the text and, if applicable, portrayed on the annual operations maps.

A list of all areas scheduled for harvest will be included in the annual work schedule. The list will identify the silvicultural system, the harvest method and the logging method for each area, as described in the applicable silvicultural ground rule in the forest management plan or any change as a result of further development of forest operations prescriptions. Any changes to forest operations prescriptions during the year that are associated with the areas scheduled for operations, will be appended to the approved annual work schedule, with the required certification (Part D, Section 2.0).
3.2.4 Wood Utilization

The scheduled harvest volume, by species, product and volume type will be summarized in AWS-2. Upon request by an overlapping licensee, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. FMP-19 of the forest management plan is the source for this information.

The utilization of second-pass harvest, if any, will be described in the text. If salvage harvest is scheduled, a separate table in the format of AWS-2 will be produced.

A discussion of the availability of fuelwood from the management unit will be provided in the text. The locations where fuelwood can be obtained will also be identified on the annual operations maps.

3.2.5 Renewal and Maintenance

Areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance (tending and protection) operations during the year will be identified on the annual operations maps, and summarized in AWS-3. FMP-21 of the forest management plan is the source for the information on renewal and tending operations. The source for the information on protection operations is the results of any insect pest management planning exercise that has been undertaken, if insect pest planning was required for the management unit (Part D, Section 6.0). The area identified for harvest as a result of insect pest management planning will be recorded separately in AWS-3 as either accelerated harvest or salvage harvest. Area identified for manual insect pest control techniques or application of insecticides will also be recorded separately in AWS-3.

All areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations, and the associated operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part B, FMP-14), will be portrayed on the annual operations maps. A list of all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations will be included in the annual work schedule. The list will identify the silvicultural treatment method(s) (e.g., method of site preparation, regeneration and tending) or insect pest control method for each area, as described in the applicable silvicultural ground rule in the forest management plan or any change as a result of further development of forest operations prescriptions. Any changes to forest operations prescriptions during the year that are associated with the areas scheduled for operations, will be appended to the approved annual work schedule, with the required certification (Part D, Section 2.0).

Operational plans for any scheduled prescribed burns (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide (Part D, Section 5.0), will be included as appendices to the annual work schedule. When those operational plans, or project descriptions and project plans, are produced and approved during the year, they will be appended to the approved annual work schedule.

3.2.5.1 Renewal Support
The volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by species), in the scheduled areas of renewal operations will be documented in the text.

Tree improvement activities that will be implemented during the year to support the production of improved seed will be described in the text. The locations of tree improvement activities (e.g., seed orchards) will be identified on the annual operations maps.

3.2.6 Roads

For each new primary and branch road that will be constructed during the year, the one kilometre-wide corridor and the 100 metre-wide crossing of each area of concern will be identified on the annual operations maps. For each crossing of an area of concern that does not involve a water crossing, the location and conditions on the construction of the crossing will be confirmed or changed, consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.2).

The conditions on location(s) and/or construction of operational roads will be portrayed, where practical, on the annual operations maps for each area of concern that does not involve a water crossing (Part B, Section 4.5.2).

For each new and existing primary and branch road, and network of operational roads, information on construction, maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning activities scheduled for the year will be recorded in AWS-4. FMP-22 of the forest management plan is a source for this information. Each new and existing road or road network scheduled to have access controls implemented during the year will be specifically identified on the annual operations maps.

A discussion of any road construction or maintenance activities that are scheduled for the purpose of creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road will be provided in the text.

3.2.6.1 Water Crossings

The planning of water crossings will occur in two successive annual work schedules to enable the review of the water crossings, with respect to the Fisheries Act.

Annual Work Schedule for the Year Prior to Construction

For each new primary or branch road that crosses an area of concern that involves a water crossing, a preliminary location and conditions on construction of the crossing have been identified (Part B, Section 4.5.2 and FMP-23). Normally, in this annual work schedule, the location and conditions on construction will be confirmed or changed. If the location or conditions on construction are changed, any change must be consistent with the forest management plan.
For each new operational road that crosses an area of concern that involves a water crossing, a crossing location and conditions on construction will be identified, consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.2 and FMP-23). Normally, in this annual work schedule, a 100 metre wide location will be identified and conditions on construction of the crossing will be determined. The location and conditions on construction must be consistent with the forest management plan.

In the annual work schedule, the 100 metre wide location of the water crossing will be portrayed on the annual operations maps, and the following information will be provided in AWS-5 to enable the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*:

(a) a description of the proposed crossing structure;

(b) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and mitigative measures; and

(c) a recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the sustainable forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to MNR, and MNR plans to abandon the road.

**Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction**

In this annual work schedule, the location and conditions on construction for each water crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, or operational considerations. If the water crossing and conditions on construction are confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, and the change is consistent with the forest management plan, approval of the water crossing will be provided as part of the approval of the annual work schedule. If a change to a water crossing location or conditions on construction is proposed in the annual work schedule for operational considerations, the change must be consistent with the forest management plan, and the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will be required prior to approval. That approval will occur in the approval of the annual work schedule or the approval of a revision to the annual work schedule.

In the annual work schedule, or any subsequent revisions to it, the 100 metre wide location of the water crossing will be portrayed on the annual operations maps, and the following information will be provided in AWS-5:

(a) the results of a review of the water crossing with respect to the *Fisheries Act*;

(b) a description of the crossing structure;

(c) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and mitigative measures; and

(d) a recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the sustainable forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to MNR, and MNR plans to abandon the road.
3.2.6.2 Existing Roads

For each existing road, or road network that will be maintained, monitored, access controlled and decommissioned during the year, information will be recorded in AWS-4. FMP-22 of the forest management plan is a source for this information. Each existing road or road network scheduled to be decommissioned during the year, will be specifically identified on the annual operations maps. For each road or road network scheduled to be decommissioned, each water crossing must have been examined using MNR’s criteria for the removal of water crossings. Each water crossing scheduled to be removed during the year will be identified in AWS-4, and on the annual operations maps.

3.2.6.3 Aggregates

Aggregate resources can be removed from Category 14 aggregate pits by the forest industry without the requirement for an aggregate permit under the *Aggregate Resources Act*. The Category 14 aggregate pits that will be used for construction and maintenance of roads during the year will be identified on the annual operations maps, with each pit individually identified. The text of the annual work schedule will include a table of Category 14 aggregate pits, with individual identifiers, pit opening dates, and projected dates for either pit closure or an application for a Category 9 permit.

3.2.7 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

Forest operations will be conducted with careful consideration for the prevention of forest fires. The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the period of the annual fire season will be described in the text, and will apply to the entire management unit and all licensees.

These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will prevent or minimize the start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to suppress small fires immediately. These measures include modifications to operations in response to fire danger and preparedness activities such as fire suppression training, communication systems and availability of fire suppression equipment on site.
MNR’s guidelines for operating conditions for fire prevention and preparedness will be used to address the following subject areas:

(a) identification of a principal licensee or MNR contact person, who will be the main contact for any fire prevention or suppression issues for the management unit;
(b) identification of a contact person for each licensee, and identification of the areas where each licensee will be operating, during the period of the fire season;
(c) a description of how operations will be modified on different types of sites to prevent fire starts during periods of high fire danger, in accordance with the provincial guidelines for modifying forest operations in response to fire danger or other relevant guidelines;
(d) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention plans and initiatives;
(e) a description of how licensees will promote fire prevention (e.g., communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring compliance with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of how fire prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;
(f) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire suppression, in order to be considered “trained and capable”, using MNR’s guidelines for modifying forest operations in response to fire danger;
(g) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression equipment that will be available and maintained on all operating areas;
(h) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of individuals involved in forest operations;
(i) a description of how fires will be reported to MNR, including a description of communications equipment;
(j) a description of a program for fire detection during periods of high fire danger, particularly during periods of modified operations; and
(k) a description of how individuals involved in forest operations will take action if a fire occurs; the working relationship with MNR; and the proposed means for transition from licensee fire fighting to MNR supervision.

3.2.8 Revenues and Expenditures

The estimate of annual revenues and expenditures for the management unit is presented in AWS-6. FMP-24 of the forest management plan is the source for this information.

3.2.9 Monitoring and Assessment

Monitoring and assessment activities scheduled for the year will be documented in the annual work schedule. These activities include forest operations inspections, monitoring of exceptions, assessments of regeneration success, and monitoring of roads and water crossings.
The monitoring and assessment program described in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.7) is the source for the information on monitoring and assessment activities. The sustainable forest licensee will prepare the annual component of the ten-year strategic compliance plan described in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.7.4). The annual component of the compliance plan will contain a description of the forest operations inspection program that will be carried out by the sustainable forest licensee during the year, and will be included as an appendix to the annual work schedule.

A description of the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2) that will be undertaken during the year will be provided in the text.

The area scheduled for assessment of regeneration success will be recorded in AWS-7. FMP-25 of the forest management plan is the source for this information.

A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings that will be carried out during the year will be provided in the text. As described in Part D, Section 3.2.6, the scheduled monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in AWS-4.

### 3.2.10 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map

An annual work schedule summary map of the areas that are scheduled for operations during the year will be prepared, and will be available for public distribution, upon request. The map will portray:

- (a) areas that are scheduled for harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations;
- (b) areas available for fuelwood;
- (c) locations of primary and branch roads to be constructed;
- (d) locations of roads and road networks with access controls; and
- (e) locations of roads and road networks to be decommissioned.

### 3.3 MNR Review and Approval

The annual work schedule must be submitted to the MNR District Manager for review and approval at least three months prior to the one-year period of its application that normally commences on April 1.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will undertake an internal review of the annual work schedule over a period of thirty days. This review may recommend approval of the annual work schedule as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the annual work schedule.

If alterations are required, a 30-day period is provided for the production of a revised annual work schedule that is again submitted for approval. Staff from the appropriate MNR area or
district office will undertake an immediate internal review to ensure that the required alterations have been made. After the alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the local citizens committee will be provided an opportunity to inspect the annual work schedule.

Following the inspection by the local citizens committee, the MNR District Manager will approve the annual work schedule. As part of the annual work schedule approval, the MNR District Manager will approve each primary, branch and operational road water crossing that will be constructed during the year, based on the information provided in the annual work schedule, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 3.2.6.1.

The annual work schedule must be approved at least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, to provide an opportunity for inspection by the public and Aboriginal communities, as described in Part D, Sections 7.2 and 8.2.

The approved annual work schedule (and any subsequent revisions to the annual work schedule) will remain available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, for the one-year duration of the schedule.

3.4 Revisions

Revisions to an annual work schedule may be required during the year. Revisions must be consistent with the approved forest management plan, including any amendments to the forest management plan. Revisions may include additions of new areas of operations from the approved forest management plan, additions and changes to water crossing locations, and changes to text, tables or maps. If new areas of operations from the approved forest management plan are added during the year, revisions will address the forest operations prescription requirement to confirm or change the preliminary prescription(s) from the forest management plan (Part D, Section 2.0).

Each revision to an annual work schedule will contain the applicable documentation and will be certified by a registered professional forester, normally the plan author. Each revision will be reviewed by MNR district staff, approved by the MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor, and appended to the approved annual work schedule. Figure D-2 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for each revision.
Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page

REVISION TO THE ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
for the
(NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, ____ to March 31, ____

I/We hereby confirm that this revision to the annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: ____________________________ __________________ [date]

Submitted by: ____________________________ __________________ [date]

Plan Author [or senior official of plan author’s organization, if other than MNR]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this revision to the annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

________________  _______________________  _________
[R.P.F. Seal]  [Plan Author]    [date]

I have read this revision to the annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Approved by: _____________________________ __________

[MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor] [date]
3.4.1 Areas of Concern

3.4.1.1 Operational Prescriptions

During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural resource features or values may be encountered, and the actual locations of natural resource features or values in areas of operations may be different than the mapped locations in the forest management plan and annual work schedule. As described in Part C, Section 2.8.2, if an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for such a feature or value is available in the forest management plan, that operational prescription will be implemented with no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to an annual work schedule. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan, and a revision to the annual work schedule, will be required.

During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that a mapped natural resource feature or value no longer exists, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of concern in the forest management plan will not be implemented. There will be no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule.

During the implementation of operations, increased protection (e.g., wider reserves) may be provided to the operational prescription for an area of concern from the approved forest management plan. There will be no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule.

3.4.1.2 Water Crossings

Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams

During the construction of a road, an unmapped stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the mapped location in the forest management plan and annual work schedule. In each of these situations, a new 100 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified in a revision to the annual work schedule. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the Fisheries Act, must occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required.

Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions

During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location and/or a change to the conditions on construction may be desired. Any change must be consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.2 and FMP-23). The new 100 metre wide location of the water crossing, and/or conditions on construction, will be identified in a revision to the...
annual work schedule. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*,
must occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule. An amendment
to the forest management plan will not be required.

### 3.4.1.3 Other Crossings

**Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features or Values**

During the construction of a road, a previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural resource
feature or value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a
natural resource feature or value may be different than the mapped location in the forest
management plan.

If a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern for such a natural resource feature
or value is necessary, an amendment to the forest management plan is required. In the
amendment, a new 100 metre wide location of the area of concern crossing, and/or new
conditions on construction, will be identified, in accordance with the planning requirements
described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3. A revision to the annual work schedule will also be
required.

If it is necessary to cross an area of concern for such a natural resource feature or value with
an operational road, and applicable conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the
crossing are available in the forest management plan, those conditions apply with no
requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to an annual work
schedule. As described in Part C, Section 2.8.3.1, if no applicable conditions are available in
the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan, and a revision to
the annual work schedule, will be required.

**Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist**

During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a mapped natural resource
feature or value no longer exist exists, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest
Information Manual*. In such a situation for a primary or branch road, the 100 metre wide
location and conditions on construction in the area of concern will no longer be constraints,
although the road must be constructed within the approved one kilometre wide corridor.
Similarly, in such a situation for operational roads, the conditions on the location(s) and/or
construction in the area of concern will no longer be constraints. As described in Part C,
Section 2.8.1, there will be no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan
or a revision to the annual work schedule.
3.4.1.4 Documentation

For all revisions to an annual work schedule, the necessary documentation will be prepared and, upon approval, appended to the approved annual work schedule at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

For all changes to operations that do not require an annual work schedule revision, updated information on the location and description of natural resource features or values that were previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) or incorrectly mapped, or that no longer exist, will be provided to the MNR area office, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Information Manual*.

For these natural resource features or values, updated information on the operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction, will be provided to the MNR area office, primarily for compliance monitoring. The updated information will be provided on maps, with text that references the applicable operational prescriptions for areas of concern in the forest management plan and describes the changes to road crossing locations and conditions on construction. The updated information will be provided to the MNR area office within 10 days of the completion of operations.

3.5 Annual Work Schedule Tables

The tables in this section are required for each annual work schedule.
**PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**

**MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ______________________

**PLAN PERIOD:** _______ TO _______

**ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE:** _______ TO _______

AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Harvest Area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class</th>
<th>Scheduled Harvest Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage of Management Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forest Unit Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## INSTRUCTIONS

### AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Harvest Area

This table summarizes the scheduled harvest area by forest unit and age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable. The sources of information for this table are FMP-15 and the results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

- **Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.**
- **Forest Unit:** Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3.
- **Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:** Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age classes. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.
- **Scheduled Harvest Area:** Enter the harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit, age class or stage of management and age class. Ensure that this total area matches the total area scheduled for the harvest in the stand lists and annual operations maps.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Wood Utilization**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Licensee or Grouping</th>
<th>Scheduled Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Volume Type</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Harvest Volume by Species (m$^3$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hardwood Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Harvest Volume by Species (m$^3$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hardwood Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total**

**Utilized**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unutilized**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subtotal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total**
INSTRUCTIONS

AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Wood Utilization

This table summarizes the forecast volumes that are scheduled to be utilized, by licensee (or grouping). The sources of information for this table are FMP-18 and the results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule.

Licensee or Grouping:
List all licensees (or groupings), if required, that are scheduled to conduct harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. If individual licensees (or groupings) are not required, identify the sustainable forest licensee name.

Scheduled Harvest Area:
Enter the scheduled harvest area (in hectares) expected to be harvested by licensee (or grouping).

Volume Type:
For each licensee (or grouping), identify the volumes expected to be harvested and marketed as Utilized, and the available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or unmarketed at roadside as Unutilized (which does not include volumes left for habitat, natural pattern emulation purposes or silviculture). Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the annual work schedule does not condone wasteful practices.

Product:
Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) where possible.

Harvest Volume by Species:
Enter the net merchantable volume (m³) by species volume type and product. Provide subtotals by volume type and licensee (or grouping). The column totals in the licensee (or grouping) section of the table must equal the column totals in the Utilized and Unutilized section below.

Utilized/Unutilized:
Enter the total utilized and unutilized volumes by product and species. Complete this part of the table only where more than one licensee or grouping is listed above.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** __________________
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** ________ TO ________
3. **ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE:** ________ TO ________

**AWS-3: Annual Schedule of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Renewal</th>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
<th>Harvest</th>
<th>Natural Disturbance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regeneration</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Natural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed Tree Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARP/HARO/CLAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Natural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Artificial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Artificial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Regeneration</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Artificial - Retreatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Retreatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Artificial - Supplemental</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Supplemental</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site Preparation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribed Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Complexity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slash Pile Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Site Preparation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tending</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribed Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Complexity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultivation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pruning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Tending</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Insecticide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial Insecticide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**INSTRUCTIONS**

**AWS-3: Annual Schedule of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

This table summarizes the scheduled area of renewal, tending and protection operations by treatment method. The sources of information for this table are FMP-21 and the results of the annual scheduling process. Any areas scheduled for protection operations must match the area identified in the annual planning process for insect pest management operations.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance**

Schedule silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance), and enter the area (in hectares) by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included in the natural disturbance column.

**Renewal**

**Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration scheduled by silvicultural system and treatment method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area scheduled for artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with re-treatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

**Site Preparation:**

Enter the area scheduled for site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burns, enter the net area only.

**Protection (Insect Pest Control):**

Enter the area scheduled for treatment by protection method.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ________________
2 PLAN PERIOD: ________ TO ________
3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: ________ TO ________

AWS-4: Annual Schedule of Road Construction and Use Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Road or Road Network Identifier</th>
<th>Construction (km)</th>
<th>Use Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Access Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Decommissioning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. Primary

|                     |                   |                   |                   |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                     |                   |                   |                   |

Subtotal

B. Branch

|                     |                   |                   |                   |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                     |                   |                   |                   |

Subtotal

Total

C. Operational

D. Existing

|                     |                   |                   |                   |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                     |                   |                   |                   |

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
INSTRUCTIONS

AWS-4: Annual Schedule of Road Construction and Use Management

This table summarizes the scheduled road construction and use management (i.e., maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning) for new primary and branch roads, and use management for new operational and existing roads and road networks. The sources of information for this table are FMP-22 and the results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

Road or Road Network Identifier:
Enter the unique name or code for each road or road network by class of road.

Construction:Enter the length (km) scheduled for construction for the new roads and extensions to existing roads (where applicable)

Use Management:

Maintenance:If applicable, provide a text summary of the maintenance scheduled for each road or road network.

Monitoring:If applicable, provide a text summary of monitoring scheduled for each road or road network.

Access Control:If applicable, enter the type of access control (e.g., gates, signs or other-specify) scheduled for each road or road network.

Decommissioning:If applicable, enter the type of decommissioning (e.g., berms, ditches, scarification, water crossing removal, or other - specify), scheduled for each road or road network.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: 

PLAN PERIOD: TO 

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: TO 

AWS-5: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed/Reviewed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of Construction</th>
<th>Area of Concern Identifier</th>
<th>Road Identifier</th>
<th>Water Crossing Structure</th>
<th>Construction Conditions</th>
<th>Future Removal (Y/N)</th>
<th>Fisheries Act Review Completed (Y/N)</th>
<th>Fisheries Act Review Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Current Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Future Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**AWS-5: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed/Reviewed**

This table summarizes the scheduled water crossings to be constructed/reviewed. Each table entry represents a road crossing of areas of concern with a unique/common prescription. A source of information for this table is FMP-23.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

2. **Year of Construction:**
   - List individual water crossings by the anticipated year of construction (i.e., A. Current Year or B. Future Year).

3. **Area of Concern Identifier:**
   - For each primary, branch or operational road scheduled to cross an area of concern, enter a unique code to identify the crossing.

4. **Road Identifier:**
   - For each road, enter the unique name or code by which the road can be identified.

5. **Water Crossing Structure:**
   - Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) proposed.

6. **Construction Conditions:**
   - Enter conditions on the construction of the water crossing.

7. **Future Removal:**
   - Indicate if the water crossing is recommended for removal in the future (yes/no).

8. **Fisheries Act Review Completed:**
   - Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (yes/no).

9. **Fisheries Act Review Results:**
   - Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing, if completed.
**PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:**
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** TO
3. **ANNUAL REPORT:** TO

**AWS-6: Annual Schedule of Revenues And Expenditures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Scheduled Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
<th>Crown Revenues (000s $)</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Salvage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Revenue from Area Charges**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Natural Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal Support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Eligible Activities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AWS-6: Annual Schedule of Revenues and Expenditures

This table summarizes the estimates of revenue accrual, and expenditures by activity and funding source. The sources of information for this table are FMP-24, the current Crown charges, and results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Revenues:**

Revenues are estimated by destination fund or account. Crown charges, used in the estimation of revenues include the minimum and residual value charges, which are revenues to the Crown, the renewal charges, which is revenue to the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account and the Forestry Futures charge, which is revenue to the Forestry Futures Trust Fund.

**Species:**

Enter the species to be harvested. The species should match the species listed in AWS-2. Include data for salvage harvest only if it is known a salvage program will be in place during the year.

**Scheduled Harvest Volume:**

Enter the total scheduled harvest volume by species (m³) consistent with AWS-2. This volume includes utilized and unutilized volume types. The utilized volume includes volumes to be invoiced as well as undersized volumes.

**Crown Revenues:**

Crown Revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Crown charges (minimum fixed rate and residual value) in effect at the time of annual work schedule preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account:**

Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the forest renewal charge in effect at the time of annual work schedule preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund:**

Forestry Futures Trust Fund revenues are estimated by multiplying than estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Forestry Futures charge in effect at the time of annual work schedule preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Revenue from Area Charges:**

The area charges are estimated by multiplying the current area charge ($0.00 for each square kilometre at time of publication) by the area of productive forest under licence.

**Expenditures:**

Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.

**Activity:**

Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account:**

Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund:**

Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

- **Natural Regeneration** - Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.
- **Artificial Regeneration** - Activities include tree planting (barefoot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.)
- **Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).
- **Tending** - Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged).
- **Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (barefoot, container, cuttings and other).
- **Other Eligible Activities** - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated).
- **Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.
### AWS-7: Annual Schedule of Assessment of Regeneration Success

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Silvicultural Ground Rule</th>
<th>Projected Forest Unit</th>
<th>Area to be Assessed (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Harvest</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forest Unit Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Harvest Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Natural Disturbance</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forest Unit Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Natural Disturbance Subtotal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AWS-7: Annual Schedule of Assessment of Regeneration Success

This table summarizes, by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule package, the area scheduled for assessment of regeneration success.

The sources of information for this table are FMP-25 and the past silvicultural records (including the renewal predictions for harvest area in the annual reports). The amount of area to be assessed for success should be consistent with the forecast of regeneration success in the plan objective and the long-term management direction.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Forest Unit:**
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance:**
Schedule assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under natural disturbance.

**Silvicultural Ground Rule:**
Enter the silvicultural ground rule (or a code referencing the ground rule as presented in FMP-5). In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was revised, only enter the final ground rule implemented.

**Projected Forest Unit:**
Enter the projected forest unit based on the silvicultural ground rule implemented.

**Area to be Assessed:**
Enter the area to be assessed.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS

For each prescribed burn that is scheduled in an annual work schedule, an operational plan will be prepared. MNR’s planning manual for prescribed burns describes the requirements for the preparation of the operational plan, and the conduct of operations.

The operational plan will contain:

(a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public (i.e., a communications plan);

(b) clear statements of the objectives to be achieved;

(c) a prescription, described in forest fire danger rating terms, of the weather and fuel conditions that will result in the necessary fuel reduction in order to achieve the objectives;

(d) a list of all areas of concern within or near the prescribed burn area, including descriptions of the natural resource features, land uses and values encountered (as identified on the values maps for the management unit), and an analysis of the potential positive and negative effects of the prescribed burn on timber and non-timber values;

(e) a description of the ignition, suppression, safety and support activities that will be required; and

(f) a prescribed burn operations map.

The operational plan will be reviewed by MNR district and regional staff. The local citizens committee will be provided an opportunity to inspect the prescribed burn operational plan prior to its approval by the MNR Regional Director.

The approved prescribed burn operational plan will be appended to the annual work schedule. The requirements for a public notice for inspection of the approved operational plan for each high complexity prescribed burn are described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.1.

Each prescribed burn area will be posted not more than seven days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs will be provided in English, and where applicable, in French and/or Ojicree. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of the burn and a telephone number of a contact person who can provide more information.

A post-burn report will be prepared and submitted with the management unit annual report (Part E, Section 2.3.5).
5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the annual work schedule. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide. MNR’s aerial spraying manual for forest management provides guidance for the preparation of the project description and project plan, the conduct of operations, and the preparation of the post-operations report.

The project description will include:

(a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
(b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
(c) the rationale for the proposed treatment;
(d) the technical name, formulation and Pest Control Products Act registration number (PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
(e) the proposed application rate;
(f) the type of aircraft to be used (rotary or fixed wing);
(g) the name of the project supervisor;
(h) the locations of the treatment areas, identified on maps;
(i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
(j) a description of the results of the application of the MNR/MOE Buffer Zones and their display on maps.

The project plan will include:

(a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public (i.e., a communications plan);
(b) an operations plan;
(c) a safety plan; and
(d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for an aerial herbicide project may be prepared at the same time as the annual work schedule or during the year of the annual work schedule. If the project description and project plan are prepared at the same time as the annual work schedule, they will be appended to the annual work schedule, and will be approved by the MNR District Manager as part of the annual work schedule. If the project description and project plan are prepared separate from the annual work schedule, they will be approved by the MNR District Manager and appended to the approved annual work schedule.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be prepared and approved as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0), and appended to the annual work schedule.
The requirements for a public notice for inspection of the approved project description and project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.1. The Pesticide Permit approval from the Ministry of the Environment (i.e., The Pesticides Act, Form 5) will be available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of operations.

Each herbicide and insecticide spray block on Crown land will be posted not more than seven days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points of access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is obtained for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the completion of the project (and removed by November 1 of the spray year), and will clearly advise the public of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be provided in English, and where applicable, in French and/or Ojicree. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of spraying, the pesticide to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed, and the telephone number of a contact person who can provide more information.

After the aerial herbicide or insecticide project has been implemented, a post-operations report will be prepared and submitted to MNR. The post-operations report will be retained at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, where it will be available for public inspection. The post-operations reports for all aerial pesticide projects conducted during the year will be submitted with the management unit annual report.
6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When there is a major insect pest infestation, an insect pest management program will be developed to determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

[NOTE: Planning of an insect pest management program may be carried out at the same time as a forest management plan is being prepared, or when operations are planned for the second five-year term. In such cases, some of the products of the planning of the insect pest management program may be available for public review with the draft forest management plan at Phase I, Stage Four of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4), or the draft planned operations at Phase II, Stage Two of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). The text and tables in the draft and approved forest management plan, or the draft and approved planned operations for the second five-year term, may contain information concerning planned insect pest management activities].

6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program

When there is a major insect pest infestation, a district insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team, comprised of MNR district and regional staff, staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s), a representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s), and if MNR considers it to be appropriate, a Forest Management Branch specialist. The representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s) will normally be the representative(s) on the planning team(s) for the forest management plan(s) for the district.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed on maps, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

(a) no treatment;
(b) accelerated harvest;
(c) redirected harvest;
(d) salvage harvest;
(e) the use of insecticides;
(f) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
(g) combinations of options (a) to (f).

Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

(a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;
(b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas eligible for insect pest management; and

(c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option, and an estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.

A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be documented.

When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially for use, MNR will give preference to such alternatives.

If the selected course of action involves accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations, the MNR District Manager will determine if an amendment to an approved forest management plan(s) is required. If so, the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans will apply (Part C, Section 2.0).

If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in accordance with the requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement described in Part D, Sections 7.5.1, 7.5.2 and 8.3.1. After the 30-day review period, a project description and a project plan will be prepared for each aerial insecticide project and submitted to the MNR Regional Director for approval, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0.

In accordance with the requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement described in Part D, Sections 7.5.1, 7.5.3 and 8.3.2, the approved project description and project plan will be available for inspection by the public at the appropriate MNR district or area office.

As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description of how MNR’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the insect pest management program must be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing note.
7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

7.1 General

7.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for annual work schedules, high complexity prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, normally by the MNR District Manager. Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

7.1.2 French Language Services Act

The French Language Services Act, as amended from time to time, will govern the public consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The translation requirements in Part A, Section 3.3.2 will apply to public notices for annual work schedules, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and insecticide projects. The French Language Services Act requirements for public consultation for forest management plans (Part A, Section 3.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management programs, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.

7.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights

The requirements of the Environmental Bill of Rights apply to insect pest management programs, as described in Part D, Section 7.5.1.

7.2 Annual Work Schedules

Upon approval of the annual work schedule, at least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, a public notice will be issued, normally by the District Manager, to advise the public that the approved annual work schedule is available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. If project descriptions and project plans for aerial herbicide projects have been prepared and approved as part of the annual work schedule, this public notice may also serve as the public notice that will be issued at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 7.4).
Reasonable efforts will be made to identify persons who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the year of the annual work schedule, and in particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Such reasonable efforts will include examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas scheduled for operations, to identify specific individuals who are directly affected.

The public notice will include the following information:

(a) a statement that the approved annual work schedule is available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and that the annual work schedule (and any subsequent revisions to the annual work schedule) will be available throughout the year of the schedule;

(b) a map of the management unit for which the annual work schedule was prepared, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit;

(c) a brief description of the forest management activities to be carried out during the year, with particular mention of silvicultural treatments of special public interest (e.g., prescribed burns, aerial applications of herbicides and insecticides);

(d) a statement and/or a map that identifies opportunities for fuelwood;

(e) a statement that identifies opportunities for tree planting jobs;

(f) a statement that an annual work schedule summary map may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, that portrays the operations that are scheduled to be carried out during the year; and

(g) the name of a contact person.

The following information and maps will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

(a) the approved annual work schedule, including any completed operational plans for prescribed burns (Part D, Section 4.0) and project descriptions and project plans for aerial applications of herbicides and insecticides (Part D, Section 5.0); and

(b) an annual work schedule summary map that portrays the operations that are scheduled to be carried out during the year.

The approved annual work schedule (and any subsequent revisions to the annual work schedule) will remain available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, for the one-year duration of the schedule.
7.3 Prescribed Burns

For each high complexity prescribed burn, a public notice will be issued by the MNR District Manager not more than 30 days before the anticipated date of the burn. The contents of the public notice will include the following information:

(a) a statement that the operational plan for the prescribed burn project is available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee;

(b) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the prescribed burn project; and

(c) the name of a contact person.

7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

For each aerial herbicide or insecticide project, the MNR District Manager will issue a public notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to advise the public that the approved project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Recipients of the direct written notice must include landowners or occupants within one kilometre of the proposed treatment area.

For an aerial herbicide project, if the project description and project plan has been prepared and approved as part of the annual work schedule, the public notice that advises the public that the approved annual work schedule is available for public inspection may serve as this notice (Part D, Section 7.2).

For an aerial insecticide project, the public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program (Part D, Section 7.5.3) may serve as this notice if the anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

The contents of the public notice will include the following information:

(a) a statement that the project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project are available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee;

(b) the anticipated date(s) of application;

(c) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the aerial herbicide or insecticide project; and

(d) the name of a contact person.

An additional notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project will be issued by the MNR District Manager at least seven days before the scheduled date of application, normally in the form of advertisements in the local media.
7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

7.5.1 General

When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that involves the aerial application of insecticides, formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of specific project proposals.

A public notice will be issued for each stage, and will include the following information:

(a) a statement of the purpose of the public consultation opportunity;
(b) a map of the MNR district for which the insect pest management program is being prepared;
(c) a description of the subject matter of the insect pest management program;
(d) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) that information and maps are available at the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and during non-business hours by arranging an appointment with the MNR District Manager; and
(e) the name of a contact person.

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of consultation are described in Part D, Sections 7.5.2 and 7.5.3.

Under the provisions of the Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR), as amended from time to time, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued in each stage of the public consultation process for the preparation of an insect pest management program. At each successive stage of the public consultation process, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry. MNR’s guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

7.5.2 Stage One - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

Stage One of the public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information centre. The purpose of the information centre is for the public to review, and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.
In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.1, the notice will contain:

(a) the schedule for the remaining formal public consultation opportunity;
(b) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
(c) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act; and
(d) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section 7.5.4.1).

A supplemental notice will be issued by the MNR District Manager at least seven days prior to the information centre, normally in the form of advertisements in the local media.

The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) insect infestation map(s) and population forecasts;
(b) maps of areas eligible for insect pest management;
(c) the current version of the values maps for the affected management unit(s) in the MNR district;
(d) the evaluation of management options;
(e) the selected course of action, with reasons;
(f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated maps;
(g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same insect species in the previous year (if any); and
(h) a comment form.

The MNR District Manager, and representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed the insect pest management program, will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

There will be a period of 30 days from the date of the information centre for the public to provide comments to the MNR District Manager.

7.5.3 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection

Stage Two of the public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program and project descriptions and project plans for specific aerial insecticide projects. The notice will be issued upon approval of the insect pest management program by the MNR Regional Director. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the insect pest management program has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an
opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program and project descriptions and project plans for specific aerial insecticide projects.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.1, the notice will contain a statement of the opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment (Part A, Section 3.4.2).

This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that must be issued at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps that were initially available at Stage One of public consultation, the approved project descriptions and project plans, and associated maps, for specific aerial insecticide projects will be available at the MNR district or area office.

7.5.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

7.5.4.1 Issue Resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be compressed).

7.5.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

The opportunity to make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment applies to insect pest management programs. For any request for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in an insect pest management program, the following process will apply:

1. There is a 30-day period following the public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program, for any person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the insect pest management program.

2. The Minister of the Environment shall notify the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to the Minister of the Environment on the request.

3. The Minister of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 30 days of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch may require MNR to submit
additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

4. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request within 30 days of receipt of all necessary information, the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe for a decision to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, and the person requesting an individual environmental assessment.

5. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

6. The Minister of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Minister does not require an individual environmental assessment, the Minister shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that the request has been denied, with reasons.

7. If the Minister of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment, the Minister of the Environment shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval under the Environmental Assessment Act. The specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the district that are the subject of the individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Minister of the Environment. Where the Minister of the Environment has given written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the district that are not the subject of the individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch.
8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT

8.1 Introduction

This section describes the consideration of Aboriginal interests, through the involvement of Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the implementation of annual operations,

In those cases where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, and contains provisions for annual operations, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the Constitution Act, 1982, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

For each notice required for an annual work schedule, high complexity prescribed burn, aerial herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

8.2 Annual Work Schedules, Prescribed Burns, and Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1, 7.2, 7.3 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

8.3 Insect Pest Management Programs

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

8.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided. In addition to the public notice content
requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) the time and location of the special information centre; and
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

8.3.2 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 INTRODUCTION ........................................................................................................ 4

2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..................................................................................................................... 5

2.1 Title and Certification Page .......................................................................................... 5

2.2 Introduction ............................................................................................................ 5

2.3 Summary and Evaluation of Operations ....................................................................... 5

2.3.1 Harvest ................................................................................................................ 5

2.3.2 Wood Utilization ................................................................................................. 7

2.3.3 Wood Utilization by Mill ..................................................................................... 8

2.3.4 Natural Disturbances ........................................................................................... 8

2.3.5 Renewal, Tending and Protection ....................................................................... 8

2.3.6 Renewal Support ................................................................................................. 9

2.3.7 Pesticide Use ....................................................................................................... 9

2.3.8 Roads .................................................................................................................. 9

2.3.9 Revenues and Expenditures .............................................................................. 10

2.3.10 Monitoring and Assessment .............................................................................. 10

2.3.10.1 Forest Operations Inspections.................................................................. 10

2.3.10.2 Exceptions................................................................................................ 11

2.3.10.3 Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success........................... 11

2.3.10.4 Monitoring of Roads and Water Crossings.............................................. 11

2.3.11 Synopsis ............................................................................................................ 11

3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT ........................................................................................ 13

4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ...................................................... 14

4.1 Analysis of Forest Disturbances ................................................................................. 14

4.2 Review of Renewal and Tending Activities ................................................................ 14

4.3 Review of Forest Modelling Assumptions ................................................................ 15

4.4 Independent Forest Audit Action Plans .................................................................... 15

4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement .................................................................... 15

4.6 Determination of Sustainability ............................................................................... 17

4.6.1 Social and Economic Review ............................................................................ 17

4.6.2 Recommendations ............................................................................................. 18

5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW ............................................................................... 19

5.1 All Annual Reports .................................................................................................. 19

5.2 Additional Requirements for Year Three, Year Seven and Year Ten Management Unit Annual Reports ................................................................. 19

6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES ........................................ 21
LIST OF TABLES

1 AR-1: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Forest Unit ......................................................22
3 AR-3: Annual Report of Planned Clearcuts.................................................................26
4 AR-4: Annual Report of Wood Utilization.................................................................28
5 AR-5: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill......................................................30
6 AR-6: Annual Report of Area and Volume Associated with Natural Disturbances........32
7 AR-7: Annual Report of Renewal Tending and Protection Operations ......................34
8 AR-8: Annual Report of Renewal Support.................................................................36
9 AR-9: Annual Report of Pesticide Use....................................................................38
10 AR-10: Annual Report of Road Construction and Use Management.......................40
11 AR-11: Annual Report of Revenues and Expenditures ............................................42
12 AR-12: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by Sustainable Forest Licensee and MNR Verification Reports of Non-Compliance...............................44
13 AR-13: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by MNR Only ....46
14 AR-14: Annual Report of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success ........48
15 AR-15: Summary of Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances by Size Class ....50
16 AR-16: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends ............................................52
17 AR-17: Summary of Available Managed Crown Productive Forest .......................54
18 AR-18: Summary of Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest ...................56
19 AR-19: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species .......................................58
20 AR-20: Assessment of Objective Achievement .......................................................60

LIST OF FIGURES

28 Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page ..........................................6
This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting.

**Phase-in Provisions**

For Part E, Section 2.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. The annual report for 2003/2004 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, with the addition of the AR-3 and text requirements relating to planned clearcuts, as described in Part E, Section 2.3.1 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The annual reports for 2004/2005 through 2010/2011, for forest management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, to the extent reasonably possible, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part E, Section 2.0 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

For Part E, Section 3.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. For annual reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, the requirements of Part E, Section 3.0 will not apply.

For Part E, Section 4.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. For annual reports for the last year of forest management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, to the extent reasonably possible, the additional requirements associated with a year ten management unit annual report, as described in Part E, Section 4.0, will apply. For example, the requirements with respect to objective achievement and sustainability in Part C, Sections 4.3 and 4.4 of the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, will be used in place of the requirements of Part E, Sections 4.5 and 4.6 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

For Part E, Section 5.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. The annual report for 2003/2004 will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario’s Crown Forests*, dated September 1996. These annual reports will be reviewed in accordance with the requirements of Part E, Section 5.0 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

The plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with the concurrence of the MNR District Manager, will implement the phase-in provisions in a reasonable and practical manner.
1.0 INTRODUCTION

For each management unit, a management unit annual report will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

The annual report is prepared for the one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31), and must be submitted by the following November 15. Text, tables, maps and other information will be provided in the annual report submission. The information requirements to support the production and submission of the annual report are described in the Forest Information Manual.

The content for all annual reports are described in Part E, Section 2.0. Additional requirements for the year seven and year ten annual reports, including an assessment of the achievement of management objectives and a determination of sustainability, are described in Part E, Section 4.0. The requirements for recommendations in the year three, year seven and year ten annual reports are described in Part E, Sections 3.0 and 4.0. Requirements for the MNR review of annual reports are described in Part E, Section 5.0.

If a forest management plan is superseded by a new approved plan, the requirements for the year seven and year ten annual reports will apply to the last annual report for the original plan (Part E, Section 4.0).
2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

2.1 Title and Certification Page

The first page of the annual report is a title and certification page, in the format of Figure E-1. This page identifies that the annual report has been prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author.

2.2 Introduction

A brief introduction will identify the name of the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee name and licence number, where applicable, the MNR district and region, and the term of the annual report. The text will note that additional contents are included if the annual report is a year three, year seven or year ten annual report.

Any significant events that have affected the implementation of the forest management plan will be noted, and the sections of the annual report which provide a detailed discussion of those events will be identified.

The annual report will contain a management unit map, at a scale which fits a standard page, and contains sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit. The map will identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and where applicable, the location of the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

2.3 Summary and Evaluation of Operations

The summary and evaluation of operations will summarize forest operations that were carried out during the year of the annual report (i.e., April 1 to March 31), and evaluate progress on implementation of the forest management plan to date. The requirements for text, tables and maps for the summary and evaluation are described in this section.

2.3.1 Harvest

Harvest area and salvage harvest area will be reported by forest unit in AR-1. The table will include the information on available harvest area, projected harvest area and forecast harvest area from FMP-15. Harvest area will also be reported by silvicultural system and harvest method in AR-2. Harvest area includes commercial thinning, and commercial and non-commercial improvement cuts.
PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTING

Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page

YEAR ___ ANNUAL REPORT
for the
(NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, ____ to March 31, ____

I hereby certify that this annual report is complete and accurate, and has been prepared to the
best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the

________________  _______________________  ___________
[R.P.F. Seal]   [Plan Author]    [date]

For the Year Three Management Unit Annual Report:

Recommended for Endorsement by:

[MNR District Manager]  [date]

Endorsed by:

[MNR Regional Director]  [date]
The text will include a discussion on progress towards harvest of the forecast harvest area by forest unit. The text will specifically note if the harvest levels are significantly behind or ahead of the average annual rate of harvest, and document concerns with respect to progress by forest unit. The area of second-pass harvest, and the area of salvage harvest will be documented in the text, and any implications on achievement of the forecast harvest area will be noted.

The area identified as second-pass harvest area will normally have been recorded as harvested after the first pass harvest has been completed. The second-pass harvest area is therefore not considered to be part of the forecast harvest area.

Maps and lists of areas of harvest operations, including salvage harvest, will be included in the annual report.

Planned clearcuts will be reported in AR-3. The information will be initially reported for planned clearcuts for the year in which harvest commenced, and will be tracked in subsequent annual reports until harvest has been completed. The table will include information on planned clearcuts from FMP-16. AR-3 will also include remarks on the progress being made to complete each planned clearcut.

The text will include a discussion on the subject of areas harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system, based on size and frequency parameters required by MNR’s approved forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

If bridging operations were conducted as part of the first annual work schedule for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1), the areas of bridging operations will be reported in the last annual report of the previous forest management plan. The area of bridging operations will be reported against the available harvest area of the previous forest management plan.

2.3.2 Wood Utilization

Harvest volume utilized (including commercial thinning and improvement cuts) will be reported by area harvested, product and species in AR-4. The table will include information from FMP-17, as well as information from MNR’s corporate scaling and billing system that will be provided by MNR to the sustainable forest licensee by September 15. Harvest volume utilized will be reported in AR-4 by licensee only if that information has been included in FMP-18.

The text will include a discussion on progress towards utilization of the forecast harvest volume, and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply. Any implications of salvage harvest volume on the utilization of the forecast harvest volume will be noted. The text will also note if the volumes in the table include undersized (e.g., tops) volume, to which Crown charges do not apply.
2.3.3 Wood Utilization by Mill

The utilization of the harvest volume by mill will be reported in AR-5. The table will include forecast information from FMP-19, as well as information from MNR’s corporate scaling and billing system that will be provided by MNR to the sustainable forest licensee by September 15. Where applicable, volumes associated with supply agreements or other Minister’s commitments to mills will be reported separately in the table.

The text will include a discussion on progress towards achievement of the volume forecast for utilization by each mill, and note any concerns.

2.3.4 Natural Disturbances

MNR will provide information on the gross natural disturbance areas to the sustainable forest licensee. The sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural disturbance areas, and determine the actual net disturbance area and associated estimated volumes, which will be reported in AR-6. Volume estimates will include all volumes (i.e., live, damaged and killed) within the net disturbance areas, even if salvage harvest has occurred or is being considered.

The text will include a description of how the volume associated with the natural disturbance areas was estimated. The text will also include a discussion of any significant implications of the natural disturbances.

Maps and lists of the net natural disturbance areas will be included in the annual report.

2.3.5 Renewal, Tending and Protection

Renewal, tending and protection operations for areas of harvest and natural disturbances, including areas of salvage harvest, will be reported in AR-7. The table will include forecast information from FMP-21. Areas reported as selection cut under regeneration, that are predominantly non-commercial improvement cuts, will also be reported as stand improvement under tending.

Renewal operations, which include natural regeneration initiated by harvest, and natural regeneration in natural disturbances, will normally be reported in the year in which the disturbance occurred. Where forest management activities (e.g., salvage harvest and/or renewal) are being considered for natural disturbances, reporting of natural regeneration may be delayed for one or two years.

Maps and lists of areas of renewal, tending and protection operations will be included in the annual report.

The text will include a discussion on progress towards achievement of the forecast levels of renewal, tending and protection operations. The text will specifically note if the renewal and
tending levels are behind the average annual rate, and document concerns with respect to progress on achievement of the forecast levels. The text will also include a discussion of the levels, and significance, of retreatments.

For each high complexity prescribed burn, the post-burn report will be submitted with the management unit annual report (Part D, Section 4.0). The post-operations reports for all aerial pesticide projects conducted during the year will be submitted with the management unit annual report (Part D, Section 5.0).

2.3.6 Renewal Support

The volume of seed collected, by species, seed zone or breeding zone, and type of collection area, will be reported in AR-8. Information on the numbers of seeds used for seeding, and trees planted, will also be reported in AR-8.

Tree improvement activities that were conducted on the management unit will be described in the text, and the locations of those activities (e.g., seed orchard sites) will be identified on maps which will be included in the annual report.

2.3.7 Pesticide Use

Information on ground and aerial pesticide projects will be summarized in AR-9. The information will be reported for projects that were conducted during the current year (i.e., the part of the calendar year immediately preceding the due date of the annual report). In the subsequent annual report, the projects will be identified on maps and lists which will be included in the annual report.

If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a separate report that describes the incident will be prepared, and appended to the annual report. If a complaint on a pesticide project has been received, a separate report will be prepared that describes the details of the complaint. The report will include a copy of any letter(s) received, and will be appended to the annual report.

2.3.8 Roads

Road construction and use management activities will be reported in AR-10. The table will include forecast information on road construction and use management from FMP-22. The text will include a discussion of progress towards meeting the forecast of road construction and use management activities in the forest management plan.

Maps and information on roads and water crossings that were constructed, and roads that were access controlled and decommissioned, will be included in the annual report.
2.3.9 Revenues and Expenditures

A summary of revenues and expenditures will be reported in Table AR-11. The table will include forecast information from FMP-24.

Information on revenues from Crown charges, including those deposited into the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account and the Forestry Futures Trust Fund, will be provided by MNR to the sustainable forest license by September 15. The expenditure information will be consistent with the expenditure reports for the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account, and the Forestry Futures Trust Fund.

The text will include a comparison of revenues and expenditures, and a discussion of the need to increase, maintain or decrease renewal rates.

2.3.10 Monitoring and Assessment

Monitoring and assessment activities that were carried out during the year will be documented in the annual report. These activities include forest operations inspections, monitoring of exceptions, assessments of regeneration success, and monitoring of roads and water crossings.

2.3.10.1 Forest Operations Inspections

Information on forest operations inspections that were conducted during the year will be summarized in AR-12 and AR-13. Information on forest operations inspections conducted by the sustainable forest licensee will be summarized in AR-12. AR-12 will also include information from MNR monitoring, and actions taken by MNR on instances of non-compliance that have been reported by the sustainable forest licensee. Information on forest operations inspections performed by MNR, as part of inspection audits and spot-checks, will be summarized in AR-13. The information that MNR compiles for AR-12 and AR-13 will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by September 15.

The text will contain a summary of:

(a) instances of non-compliance, including:

(i) the type(s) of non-compliance which occurred most frequently;

(ii) the reason(s) for those occurrences; and

(iii) the kinds of actions taken; and

(b) other undesirable conditions observed in areas of operations which appear to be related to forest management activities.

The text will also contain a discussion of how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the conduct of forest operations to minimize instances of non-compliance and other undesirable conditions.
2.3.10.2 Exceptions

The text will contain a summary of the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2) that was undertaken during the year, and a summary of results to date.

2.3.10.3 Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success

A summary of the assessments of regeneration success that were undertaken during the year will be reported in AR-14. The area which was successfully regenerated, the area that was regenerated to the projected forest unit and the area which was not successfully regenerated, will also be reported in AR-14. The assessments of regeneration success will be provided separately, by forest unit, for harvest areas and areas of natural disturbance. The table will include forecast information from FMP-25.

The text will include a discussion of the progress towards completing the forecast assessments of regeneration success. The text will also include a discussion of the regeneration and silvicultural success to date (i.e., the area regenerated and the area regenerated to the projected forest unit), and any implications on achievement of the long-term management direction for the forest.

Maps and lists of areas successfully regenerated will be included in the annual report.

2.3.10.4 Monitoring of Roads and Water Crossings

The text will contain a summary of:

(a) the monitoring of roads and water crossings that was undertaken during the year; and

(b) the observations during monitoring, including erosion and washouts of water crossings and any problems associated with road access controls.

The text will contain a discussion of the effectiveness of the use management strategies for roads in the forest management plan.

2.3.11 Synopsis

The text will contain a synopsis of the implementation and monitoring of forest operations to date. This synopsis will include:

(a) observations on the levels of forest operations that have been implemented to date, and any implications on the achievement of objectives of the forest management plan and future levels of forest operations; and
(b) a review of circumstances (e.g., large natural disturbances, markets) that affected, or are expected to affect, the implementation of forest operations and the achievement of objectives in the forest management plan.
3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE
MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT

The year three management unit annual report will serve as the mid-plan review by describing progress on implementation of the forest management plan to date. In this report, the registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author, will report on his or her determination as to whether or not the long-term management direction remains valid for the second five-year term.

In addition to the requirements of each management unit annual report (Part E, Section 2.0), the year three annual report will include:

(a) a discussion of any implications on the long-term management direction, from the synopses in the year one, two and three annual reports (Part E, Section 2.3.11); and

(b) one of the following recommendations relating to the validity of the long-term management direction of the forest management plan, with rationale:
   (i) the long-term management direction remains valid, and planning of operations for the second five-year term proceeds;
   (ii) the long-term management direction remains substantially valid, but requires minor adjustments, and planning of operations for the second five-year term proceeds, with appropriate modifications; or
   (iii) the long-term management direction is no longer valid, and an unscheduled plan renewal is required (Part C, Section 3.2).

If the plan author’s recommendation is that the long-term management direction remains substantially valid, the required minor adjustments will be documented in the text of the annual report.
4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the requirements described in this section will apply to the year seven and year ten management unit annual reports.

The year seven annual report will include an analysis of forest disturbances, review of renewal and tending activities, review of forest modeling assumptions, a preliminary assessment of objective achievement, and a preliminary determination of sustainability. The year seven annual report will identify any circumstances that are anticipated to significantly change the results of the assessment, analysis and assessments during the remaining three years of implementation of the forest management plan. The year seven annual report will be used in the preparation of the next forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.4).

The year ten annual report will update the assessment, analysis and reviews in the year seven annual report to reflect the information for the full implementation of the forest management plan. The year ten annual report will be used in Phase II planning (Part A, Section 2.1.2.3).

The requirements for the year ten annual report will apply to the annual report prepared for the last year of plan implementation, with modifications as necessary, if a forest management plan is superseded by a new approved plan before the scheduled renewal of the plan.

4.1 Analysis of Forest Disturbances

The size and frequency of forest disturbances created by harvest and natural disturbances are reported in AR-15. The text will describe progress towards completion of planned forest disturbances.

Any implications of the harvest and new natural disturbances on the achievement of the desired landscape pattern, and recommendations to be considered in the planning of future forest disturbances, will be documented in the text of the annual report.

4.2 Review of Renewal and Tending Activities

A summary of the harvest and regeneration trends will be reported in AR-16.

A review of renewal and tending activities will be prepared by a registered professional forester, and documented in the text of the annual report. The review will include a discussion of:

(a) the amount of renewal and tending operations to date, as reported in AR-7;
(b) the expenditures on renewal and tending operations, as reported in AR-11;
The silvicultural effectiveness of renewal and tending operations, as reported in AR-14; and
harvest and regeneration trends, as reported in AR-16.

The review will also include recommended changes that may affect the future levels of, effectiveness of, and expenditures on, renewal and tending operations. The recommended changes will be based on the information from this annual report, and previous reports of past forest operations or ten year management unit annual reports from previous forest management plans.

The effectiveness of silvicultural treatment packages that are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides will be assessed, using the summary of monitoring results (Part E, Section 2.3.10.2).

4.3 Review of Forest Modelling Assumptions

In the preparation of a forest management plan, the development of the long-term management direction for the forest is based on a number of assumptions (Part A, Section 1.2). For example, there are assumptions related to forest dynamics and development information, natural depletions, anticipated industrial demand and silvicultural funding levels. These assumptions, which are documented in the analysis package in the supplementary documentation, will be reviewed. The summary and evaluation of operations (Part E, Section 2.3) will be considered in the review.

The review will include observations and comments on any of the assumptions, as well as conclusions and recommendations for modifications or refinements. The review will be documented in the text of the annual report.

4.4 Independent Forest Audit Action Plans

The text will summarize recommendations from action plans for independent forest audits which have been prepared during the plan period to date. The text will include a discussion of progress on implementation of the action plans, and any implications for subsequent planning.

4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement

Part A, Section 1.2.6.3 identifies the requirement for the assessment of objective achievement in the year seven and ten annual reports. An assessment of the achievement of management objectives in the forest management plan will be documented in the text of the annual report. In the assessment, information provided in all of the annual reports to date will be considered. A summary of the available managed Crown productive forest, the forest condition for the Crown productive forest, and the habitat for selected wildlife species, will be reported in AR-
17, AR-18 and AR-19, respectively. A summary of the assessment of objective achievement will be reported in AR-20.

The assessment will examine each management objective and target(s), and will consider:

(a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and is the difference important?
(b) Has the target been substantially met, or is progress being made on achievement of the target?
(c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling assumptions and inputs?
(d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?
(e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification to better represent the local forest?
(f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or make adjustments to the long-term management direction?

For each management objective in the forest management plan that is directly associated with one of the four categories of objectives required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, the assessment will consider:

(a) Forest Diversity
   (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?
   (ii) Do the forest condition trends in AR-18 indicate progress towards the desired forest condition?
   (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?
(b) Social and Economic Matters
   (i) Do the data in AR-1 and AR-3 indicate that the available harvest area and associated volume are being fully utilized?
   (ii) Do the trends in AR-17 indicate a concern with the area available for forest management?
   (iii) Did implementation of the forest management plan contribute to mill and community stability?
   (iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?
(c) Forest Cover
   (i) Were the habitat targets for selected wildlife species achieved?
   (ii) Do the trends in AR-19 indicate a concern with the area of habitat for any of the selected wildlife species?
(d) Silviculture
   (i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?
   (ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?
   (iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?

If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons and a discussion of the management implications.
4.6 Determination of Sustainability

Part A, Section 1.2.6 describes the requirement for determinations of sustainability during the development of a forest management plan and following the implementation of operations. The determination of sustainability in the year seven and ten annual reports will conclude whether the implementation of the forest management plan has provided for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, through a collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will conclude whether on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) Are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?
(b) Is there a pattern to the objectives that are not within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular Crown Forest Sustainability Act objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1))?
(c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
(d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
(e) Are the levels of objective achievement attributable to forest management?

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the annual report, and will:

(a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved; and
(b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

4.6.1 Social and Economic Review

An updated social and economic description will be prepared, and a summary of changes from the description in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 2.5) will be included in the year seven and year ten annual reports. Changes in the social and economic description will be analyzed to determine if they have resulted from the implementation of the forest management plan. Conclusions of the analysis will be documented in the text of the annual report.
4.6.2 Recommendations

Recommendations will be developed as a result of the determination of sustainability and the social and economic review, and will be documented in the text of the annual report. The recommendations will focus on considerations for the next forest management plan, including maintaining or changing the long-term management direction and forest management operations.
5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW

5.1 All Annual Reports

The annual report will be submitted to MNR in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual and Part E of this manual. The Annual Report – Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) must be submitted in hard copy as part of the annual report submission. The MNR registered professional forester for the management unit will work with the plan author to ensure that a complete and accurate annual report is prepared and submitted to the MNR District Manager by November 15.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will have the opportunity to review the annual report for completeness and accuracy. The District Manager will provide the results of the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author will address comments resulting from the MNR review, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be resubmitted by February 15.

The plan author will present the annual report to the local citizens committee, in a manner determined by the MNR District Manager in consultation with the committee.

The annual report will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

5.2 Additional Requirements for Year Three, Year Seven and Year Ten Management Unit Annual Reports

Staff from the appropriate MNR area, district and regional office will review the year three, seven and ten annual reports, within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The District Manager will include the results of the regional review in the MNR review which is provided to the plan author. The plan author will address comments resulting from the MNR review, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be resubmitted by February 15.

The year three annual report will be presented to the local citizens committee. The MNR District Manager will consider any comments from the local citizens committee, and provide a recommendation on endorsement of the annual report to the MNR Regional Director, normally by February 21.

The MNR Regional Director will review the year three annual report, and the MNR District Manager’s recommendation on endorsement, and make a decision on acceptance of the recommendation. The MNR Regional Director will endorse the year three annual report, normally by March 1, to enable the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.0), or the preparation of an unscheduled plan renewal (Part C, Section 3.2), to proceed. The MNR Regional Director will sign the hard copy of the year three Annual Report – Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) submitted by the plan author to formalize the endorsement.
The MNR Regional Director will notify MNR’s Forest Management Branch, the MNR District Manager, the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment and the sustainable forest licensee of his or her decision after endorsement of the year three annual report.
6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES

The tables in this section are required for management unit annual reports. AR-1 to AR-14 are required for all annual reports. AR-15 to AR-20 are required for the year seven and ten annual reports.
MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ____________________
PLAN PERIOD: _____________ TO ______________
ANNUAL REPORT: ____________ TO ______________

AR-1: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Forest Unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Available Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class</th>
<th>Projected Area (ha)</th>
<th>Harvest Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td>Actual This Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Actual To Date</td>
<td>% Forecast Harvested To Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Salvage This Year (ha)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stage of Management Subtotal

Forest Unit Subtotal

Total

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.
Copie à des fins d’archivage. Veuillez consulter l’éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
**INSTRUCTIONS**

**AR-1: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes forecast and actual harvest area by forest unit and age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable. Salvage harvest area is recorded for the annual report year only.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

2. **Forest Unit:**
   - Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3.

3. **Available Harvest Area (ha):**
   - Enter the ten-year available harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit.

4. **Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**
   - Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

5. **Projected Harvest Area:**
   - Enter the projected harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit, age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable.

6. **Harvest Area:**
   - Enter the harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable.

7. **Forecast:**
   - Enter the forecast (10-year) harvest area from FMP-15.

8. **Actual This Year:**
   - Enter the total area harvested during the annual report year.

9. **Actual To Date:**
   - Enter the total of harvest area to date from the start of the plan period.

10. **% Forecast Harvested:**
    - Enter the percent (actual to date divided by forecast times 100).

11. **Salvage This Year:**
    - Enter the amount of salvage harvest this year by forest unit and age class.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
## AR-2: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Silvicultural System and Harvest Method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Silvicultural System</th>
<th>Harvest Method</th>
<th>This Year</th>
<th>To Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut</td>
<td>Block Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seed Tree Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HARP/HARO/CLAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commercial Thinning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut System Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelterwood</td>
<td>Uniform Shelterwood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Preparatory Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seed Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First Removal Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Last Removal Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strip Shelterwood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelterwood System Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection</td>
<td>Selection Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection System Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-2: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Silvicultural System and Harvest Method

This table summarizes the level of actual harvest area for the report year and to date, by silvicultural system and harvest method.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Silvicultural System and Harvest Method:**

Report area harvested under the appropriate silvicultural system and harvest method identified in the table.

**Actual Harvest Area:**

Enter the harvest area (in hectares) by silvicultural system and harvest method.

**This Year:**

Enter the total area harvested during the annual report year.

**To Date:**

Enter the total of harvest area to date from the start of the plan period.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

Note: The area of salvage harvest is not included in this table.
**MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ____________________

**PLAN PERIOD:** _____________ TO ______________

**ANNUAL REPORT:** ____________ TO ______________

**AR-3: Annual Report of Planned Clearcuts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location ID</th>
<th>Planned Clearcut Area (ha)</th>
<th>Planned Clearcut Harvest Area This Term (ha)</th>
<th>Actual Clearcut Harvest Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To Date This Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Remarks on Progress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Total       |                             |                                             |                          |

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult original publisher for current version.

Copie à des fins d'archivage. Veuillez consulter l’éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-3: Annual Report of Planned Clearcuts

This table provides a list of planned clearcuts where harvest has been initiated or completed during the applicable five-year term. Some of the information included in this table is contained in the applicable Phase I or Phase II version of FMP-16. The definition of clearcut (i.e., temporal and spatial standards) used in the forest management plan is to be used when determining the boundaries and area (ha) of planned clearcuts for the purpose of completing this table. It is important to note that “planned clearcuts” include planned harvest area reported in AR-1 for those forest units managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, and will often include area harvested in previous plan terms. However, since planned clearcuts are assessed each five-year term, this table will only relate to the five-year term containing a particular annual report year, and not to the ten-year period.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Location ID:
Enter the unique location identifier for each planned clearcut that has been initiated or completed during the five-year term.

Planned Clearcut Area:
Enter the total planned clearcut area (in hectares) for each unique location. The source of this information is FMP-16.

Planned Clearcut Harvest Area This Term:
Enter the planned clearcut harvest area this term (in hectares) for each unique location. The source of this information is FMP-16. This information is listed by five-year term.

Actual Clearcut Harvest Area:
Enter the actual clearcut area (in hectares) for each unique location.

This Year:
Enter the actual clearcut harvest area completed during the annual report year for each planned clearcut.

To Date This Term:
Enter the actual clearcut harvest area completed to date for the current five-year term.

To Date:
Enter the actual clearcut harvest area completed to date for the current five-year term and in previous terms, if applicable.

Remarks on Progress:
Enter a brief description of progress to date (e.g., % completed, anticipated year of completion, explanations for differences when the harvest operations are completed).

Enter all totals as required.
AR-4: Annual Report of Wood Utilization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Licensee or Grouping</th>
<th>Actual Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Harvest Volume by Species (m³)</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hardwood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### A. Harvest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forecast Volume</th>
<th>Actual Volume Utilized This Year</th>
<th>Actual Volume Utilized To Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. Salvage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actual Volume Utilized This Year</th>
<th>Actual Volume Utilized To Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-4: Annual Report of Wood Utilization

This table summarizes the actual volumes utilized by licensee (or grouping), and by product. The source of this information is the Provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Part A. Harvest:
Complete this section for all invoiced and undersize harvest volumes except salvage harvest volumes.
All second-pass harvest volumes are included as well.

Part B. Salvage
Complete this section for invoiced and undersize salvage harvest volumes only.

Licensee or Grouping:
List all licensees (or groupings), if required, that conducted harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. If individual licensees (or groupings) are not required, identify the SFL name.

Harvest Area:
Enter the area harvested in hectares by licensee (or grouping).

Product:
Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) for the actual volumes utilized.

Harvest Volume by Species:
Enter the net merchantable volume (m³) by species and product utilized from harvest area by licensee (or grouping).

Forecast Volume:
For Part A only, enter the forecast volume (net merchantable m³) by species. The source of this information is FMP-17.

Actual Volume Utilized This Year:
For Part A and Part B, enter the volume utilized (net merchantable m³) by species and product for the annual report year.

Actual Volume Utilized To Date:
For Part A and Part B, enter the volume utilized (net merchantable m³) by species and product from the start of the plan period.

% Forecast Utilized to Date:
Enter the percent (total actual volume utilized to date divided by forecast volume by species times 100).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
AR-5: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mill</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Volume by Species (m$^3$)</th>
<th>Conifer</th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
<th>Hardwood</th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>% Forecast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>% Forecast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-5: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill

This table summarizes actual volume (harvest and salvage) utilized by mills which received wood from the management unit, by product and species. The source of this information is the Provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Mill:
List all mills that received wood from the management unit.

Product:
Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) utilized by each mill.

Volume by Species:
Enter the volume (net merchantable m³) by species and product that was utilized by each mill. Ensure the total volume utilized by species is consistent with the volumes in AR-4.

Forecast:
Enter the forecast mill utilization volume (m³) by species. The source of this information is FMP-19.

This Year:
Enter the volume utilized (net merchantable m³) by species and product by mill for the annual report year.

To Date:
Enter the utilized (net merchantable m³) by species and product by mill from the start of the plan period

% Forecast:
Enter the percent (actual volume utilized to date divided by forecast mill utilization times 100).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### AR-6: Annual Report of Area and Volume Associated with Natural Disturbances

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disturbance Type</th>
<th>Area (ha) by Forest Unit</th>
<th>Estimated Volume (m³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blowdown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other (specify)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total This Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total To Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INSTRUCTIONS

**AR-6: Annual Report of Area and Volumes Associated with Natural Disturbances**

This table summarizes the area (ha) by forest unit, and volumes (m³) by conifer and hardwood, associated with natural disturbances that occurred on the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

- **Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.**
- **Disturbance Type:**
  - The disturbance types include fire, insect, disease, blowdown and others. In the case of others, specify the disturbance type (e.g., ice storm).
- **Area (ha) by Forest Unit:**
  - Enter the area (in hectares) by forest unit for each disturbance type.
- **Estimated Volume (m³):**
  - Enter the estimated volumes (net merchantable m³) of conifer and hardwood for the total area of all forest units by disturbance type.
- **Total This Year:**
  - Enter the total for each column for the annual report year.
- **Total To Date:**
  - Enter the total for each column from the start of the plan period.
- Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTING

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ____________________
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** _____________TO__________________
3. **ANNUAL REPORT:** ____________TO______________

**AR-7: Annual Report of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Renewal</th>
<th>Harvest</th>
<th>Natural Disturbance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td>Actual This Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Actual To Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>% Forecast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regeneration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Natural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed Tree Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARP/HARO/CLAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop Shelterwood - Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Natural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Artificial</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Artificial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total Regeneration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Artificial - Retreatment</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Retreatment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Artificial - Supplemental**

| Planting                          |         |         |
| Seeding                           |         |         |
| **Total Supplemental**            |         |         |

**Site Preparation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mechanical</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribed Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Complexity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slash Pile Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Site Preparation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tending**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cleaning</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribed Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Complexity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Tending</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Protection (Insect Pest Control)**

| Harvest                          |         |         |
| Manual                            |         |         |
| Ground Insecticide                |         |         |
| Aerial Insecticide                |         |         |
| **Total Protection**              |         |         |
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-7: Annual Report of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations

This table summarizes, by harvest and natural disturbance, the area of renewal, tending and protection operations, including those associated with tree improvement. Forecast, actual this year, actual to date and % forecast figures are included.

Complete the table as follows

Harvest/Natural Disturbance
Report silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance), and enter the area in (hectares) by treatment method. Report the treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed under natural disturbance.

Renewal

Regeneration:
Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with re-treatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

Site Preparation:
Enter the area treated by site preparation method. Site preparation for natural regeneration is included in the area reported. For slash pile burns, the area of the burn will reflect an estimate of the area actually treated, rather than the total area that provided the source of the slash.

Tending:
Enter the area treated by tending method. Areas reported as selection cut harvest under regeneration, that are predominantly non-commercial, will also be reported as improvement cut under tending.

Protection (Insect Pest Control)
Enter the area treated by protection method.

Enter forecasts from FMP-21, actual for the annual report year, actual to date from plan start and % forecast (i.e., actual to date divided by forecast times 100).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ____________________

**PLAN PERIOD:** _____________ TO ________________

**ANNUAL REPORT:** ____________ TO ________________

AR-8: Annual Report of Renewal Support

### A. Seed Collected

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seed Zone/Breeding Zone</th>
<th>Source of Seed Collection</th>
<th>Seed or Cones Collected (hl)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. Seeding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seed Zone/Breeding Zone</th>
<th>Source of Seed Collection</th>
<th>Number of Seed Used (000s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C. Tree Planting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seed Zone/Breeding Zone</th>
<th>Stock Type</th>
<th>Number of Trees Planted (000s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-8: Annual Report of Renewal Support

This table summarizes renewal support, including volume of seeds and cones collected, the number of seeds used for direct seeding, and the number of trees planted. Seeds used and trees planted are recorded for renewal and retreatment/supplemental treatment.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

A. Seed Collected/B. Seeding/C. Tree Planting

Complete applicable table section for seed collected, seed used for seeding, and trees planted.

Species:
Enter the tree species.

Seed Zone/Breeding Zone:
Enter the seed zone/breeding zone for the seed collected, seed used for direct seeding, or the source of the seed for planting (i.e., nursery) stock.

Source of Seed Collection or Stock Type:
Identify the source of the seed collected and used (e.g., bulk stand, seed collection area, seed production area or seed orchard) or the nursery stock type, as applicable.

A. Seed Collected: Seeds or Cones Collected (hl):
This Year: Enter the volume of seeds or cones collected (in hectolitres) by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the volume of seeds or cones collected (in hectolitres) by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type from the start of the plan period.

B. Seeding: Number of Seed Used (000s):
This Year: Enter the amount (000’s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year. Do not include seed used to produce nursery stock.

To Date: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.

C. Tree Planting: Number of Trees Planted (000s):
This Year: Enter the number (000s) of trees (i.e., Nursery Stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the amount (000s) of trees (i.e., Nursery Stock) planted by species, seed zone, and stock type from the start of the plan period.
**PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTING**

**MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ____________________

**PLAN PERIOD:** _____________TO__________________

**ANNUAL REPORT:** ____________TO______________

**AR-9: Annual Report of Pesticide Use**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Type</th>
<th>Purpose of Application</th>
<th>Pesticide Used</th>
<th>Incidents</th>
<th>Complaints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Trade Name and PCP No.</td>
<td>Size of Area Treated (ha)</td>
<td>Total Quantity of Pesticide Product Used (in l or kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-9: Annual Report of Pesticide Use

This table summarizes the use of pesticides on the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report.

**Application Type:**
Enter the method of application (e.g., ground application, aerial fixed wing, aerial rotary wing, or other (specify method)).

**Purpose of Application:**
Enter the purpose for the application (e.g., site preparation, cleaning (conifer release), protection (specify pest), other (specify purpose)).

**Pesticide Used:**
**Trade Name and PCP No.:**
Enter the name of the pesticide product and the *Pest Control Products Act* registration number.

**Size of Area Treated:**
Enter the area (in hectares) treated.

**Total Quantity of Pesticide Product Used (l or kg):**
Enter the actual amount (either volume (litres) or weight (kilograms)) of the pesticide used. This is not the volume of spray mixture.

**Incidents:**
If an incident happened during the application (e.g., spills, over-spray, aircraft down, etc.), enter “yes” in this column.

**Complaints:**
If there were complaints about the pesticide application (e.g., reports of health effects), enter “yes” in this column.
### AR-10: Annual Report of Road Construction and Use Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Road or Road Network Identifier</th>
<th>Construction (km)</th>
<th>Use Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td>Actual This Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Primary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Branch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Operational</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Existing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INSTRUCTIONS

#### AR-10: Annual Report of Road Construction and Use Management

This table summarizes road construction and use management activity (i.e., maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning) for all primary and branch roads, as well as operational and existing road networks. For construction (Actual This Year and Actual To Date), report only the length of road for which construction has been completed.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

2. **Road or Road Network Identifier:**
   - Enter the unique name or code by which each road (primary or branch roads) or road network (operational and existing roads) can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

3. **Construction:**
   - **Forecast:** Enter the length of primary and branch road construction for the plan period (10-year) from FMP-22.
   - **Actual This Year:** Enter the length of actual construction completed for primary and branch roads and for operational road networks for the annual report year.
   - **Actual to Date:** Enter the length of actual construction completed for primary and branch roads and for operational road networks from the start of the plan period.

4. **Use Management:**
   - Enter a brief text description of each use management activity that occurred during the annual report year.
   - **Maintenance:** If applicable, provide a brief text summary of the maintenance (e.g., grading, water crossing maintenance).

5. **Monitoring:**
   - If applicable, provide a brief text summary of monitoring (e.g. number of water crossings inspected, entire road length inspected following rainstorm, access control sign inspected for damage).

6. **Access control:**
   - If applicable, enter the type of access control (e.g., gates, signs or other-specify) that was established during the annual report year.

7. **Decommissioning:**
   - If applicable, enter the type of decommissioning (e.g., berms, ditches, scarification, water crossing removal, or other - specify), and indicate if the decommissioning is partially or fully completed. After decommissioning is completed, these roads will not appear in subsequent annual reports.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
## AR-11: Annual Report of Revenues and Expenditures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Actual Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
<th>Crown Revenues (000s $)</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Salvage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Revenue from Area Charges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Expenditures ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forecast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal Support</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Eligible Activities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copy for archive purposes. Please consult the original publisher for the current version.

Copie à des fins d’archivage. Veuillez consulter l’éditeur original pour la version actuelle.
AR-11: Annual Report of Revenues and Expenditures

This table summarizes revenue accrued, and expenditures made by activity and funding source.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Revenues:**

- **Species:** Enter the species harvested as A. Harvest or B. Salvage. The species should match the species listed in AR-4.

- **Actual Harvest Volume (m³):** Enter the invoiced and undersized harvest volume (in cubic metres). Ensure that the total volume by species matches AR-4.

- **Crown Revenues (000s $):** Enter the Crown Revenues in thousands of dollars.

- **Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $):** Enter the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account revenue in thousands of dollars.

- **Forest Futures Trust Fund (000s $):** Enter the Forestry Futures Trust Fund revenue in thousands of dollars.

- **Revenue from Area Charges:** Enter the Revenue from Area Charges in thousands of dollars.

**Expenditures:**

Enter expenditures by the broad activity categories listed. Protection expenditures are not an eligible expense from the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account.

- **Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $):** Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

- **Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $):** Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

Enter forecasts from FMP-24, actual for the report year, and actual to date from plan start.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

- **Natural Regeneration** - Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.
- **Artificial Regeneration** - Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.).
- **Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).
- **Tending** - Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged).
- **Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).
- **Other Eligible Activities** - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated).
- **Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.
MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ____________________
PLAN PERIOD: _____________TO__________________
ANNUAL REPORT: ____________TO______________

AR-12: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by Sustainable Forest Licensee and MNR
Verification Reports of Non-Compliance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Operations Inspected</th>
<th>Total Number of Industry Inspection Reports</th>
<th>Number of Joint Inspections with MNR</th>
<th>Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports</th>
<th>Non-Compliance</th>
<th>In-Compliance</th>
<th>Non-Compliance</th>
<th>#</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue(s) of Non Compliance: Significance Determined by MNR</th>
<th>Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken (Note: multiple actions can be applied per non-compliance)</th>
<th>Remedy Order(s) Issued</th>
<th>s. 58 Penalty Levied</th>
<th>s. 64 Offence Levied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Significant</td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
<td>Resolved by Warning or Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Concern</th>
<th>Cutting</th>
<th>Fire Prevention</th>
<th>Wasteful Practice</th>
<th>Wood Measurement/ Movement</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-12: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by Sustainable Forest Licensee and MNR Verification Reports of Non-Compliance

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection information collected by the SFL Holder during the previous fiscal year and MNR monitoring and action associated with instances of SFL holder reported non-compliance. The requirements for forest operations inspections and compliance reporting are described in the Forest Compliance Handbook.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

2. **Total Number of Industry Inspection Reports:**
Enter the total number of inspection reports by the forest industry.

3. **Number of Joint Inspections with MNR:**
Enter the total number of joint inspection reports completed. Joint inspections do not take the place of any other inspection type that is the normal responsibility of the respective parties and are not included in the totals of required inspections reported by the SFL holder or MNR.

4. **Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports:**
Enter the total number of inspection reports of activities conducted on Crown land under the management of an SFL, where the activity was not planned, licensed, authorized or sanctioned through the FMP. Non SFL related inspections are not attributed to the acts/actions or omission by the SFL and are not included in the total number of industry submitted reports.

5. **Total Number of Industry Submitted Reports:**
In Compliance: Enter the total number of industry submitted reports that were “in-compliance” and “in-compliance with comments”

Non Compliance or Not In Compliance: Enter the total of all inspections with a Non-Compliance assessment by Operation Type.

6. **Non Compliance – Inspections by Activity:**
Enter the number of non-compliant activity reports by the activity types. The totals may not equal the totals of the “Industry Submitted Non-Compliance Reports” column because one report can have one or more activities shown as non-compliant.

7. **Number of Industry Non-Compliance Reports Verified by MNR:**
All industry submitted reports of non-compliance, by Activity, must be verified by the MNR and recorded here.

8. **Issue(s) of Non-Compliance: Significance Determined by MNR**
Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance assigned by MNR to each category of significance.

9. **Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken:**
Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance in each status and/or action category. One or more remedies or enforcement actions may be applied to a single or multiple instance of non-compliance.

Enter all totals as required, for the report year and the four previous years.
### MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

### PLAN PERIOD: _____________ TO ______________

### ANNUAL REPORT: ____________ TO ______________

### AR-13: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by MNR Only

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total Number of MNR Submitted Reports (Excludes AR 11.1 Verifications)</th>
<th>Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports</th>
<th>Non-Compliance</th>
<th>Significance of Issue(s) of Non-Compliance by MNR Spot Check (SC) &amp; Audit (Aud)</th>
<th>Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken (Note: multiple actions can be applied per non-compliance)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td>Aud</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity #</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aggregate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area of Concern</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Construction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Clearing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area of Concern</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wasteful Practice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood Measurement/Movement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postcode Application</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postcode Application</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Total Year:

### Total Year:

### Total Year:

### Total Year:
INSTRUCTIONS

AR 13: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by MNR Only

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection information collected by MNR staff during the previous fiscal year and MNR monitoring and action associated with instances of MNR reported non-compliance. The requirements for forest operations inspections and compliance reporting are described in the Forest Compliance Handbook.

MNR will compile the information for tables AR-12 and AR-13 and provide these tables to the SFL holder by September 15. The plan author will prepare the text, which accompanies AR-12 and AR-13 that summarizes the monitoring information.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Total Number of Reports:
Enter the total number of inspection reports completed by MNR.

Number of Joint Inspections with Industry:
Enter the total number of joint inspection reports completed. Joint inspections do not take the place of any other inspection type that is the normal responsibility of the respective parties and are not included in the totals of required inspections reported by the SFL holder or MNR.

Total Number of MNR Submitted Reports (excludes AR-12 Verifications):

In Compliance Spot Check, Audit: Enter the total number of MNR submitted spot check and audit reports that were “in-compliance” and “in-compliance with comments”

Non Compliance Spot Check, Audit: Enter the total number of inspections with a Non-Compliance assessment.

Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports:
Enter the total number of inspection reports of activities conducted on Crown land under the management of an SFL, where the activity was not planned, licensed, authorized or sanctioned by through the FMP. Non SFL related inspections are not attributed to the acts/actions or omission by the SFL and are not included in the total number of MNR submitted reports.

Non Compliance – Inspections by Activity:
Enter the number of non-compliant activity reports by the activity types. The totals may not equal the totals of the “MNR Submitted Non-Compliance Reports” column because one report can have one or more activities shown as non-compliant.

Significance of Issue(s) of Non-Compliance by MNR Spot Check (SC) and Audit (Aud):
Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance assigned by MNR to each category of significance.

Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken:
Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance in each status and/or action category. One or more remedies or enforcement actions may be applied to a single or multiple instance of non-compliance.

Enter all totals as required, for the report year and the four previous years.
MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ____________________

PLAN PERIOD: _____________ TO ______________

ANNUAL REPORT: ____________ TO ______________

AR-14:  Annual Report of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area Assessed This Year (ha)</th>
<th>Area Assessed To Date (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Area Successfully Regenerated</td>
<td>Area Not Successfully Regenerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projected Forest Unit</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Forest Unit</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Successfully Regenerated to Projected Forest Unit</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Harvest</th>
<th>Forest Unit Subtotal</th>
<th>Harvest Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Natural Disturbance</td>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td>Natural Disturbance Subtotal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-14: Annual Report of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success

This table provides a summary, by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule, of the area assessed and regenerated successfully. This table reports assessments for harvest and natural disturbance (including salvage). Assessments of regeneration of natural disturbance areas, which have been salvage harvested, are required and included in the table. Assessments are not required for areas of natural disturbance that have not been salvage harvested, but may be included in the table when conducted.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest.

Harvest/Natural Disturbance:
Report assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under natural disturbance.

Silvicultural Ground Rule:
Enter the silvicultural ground rule (or a code referencing the suite of optional treatments as presented in the silvicultural ground rule in FMP-5) that was implemented. In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was revised, enter only the final ground rule implemented.

Projected Forest Unit:
Enter the projected forest unit as described in the applicable silvicultural ground rule.

Forecast of Assessment (ha):
Enter the area (in hectares) forecast for assessment from FMP-25.

Area Assessed This Year (ha):

Area Successfully Regenerated:
Enter the area (in hectares) that is successfully regenerated as either regenerated to projected FU (e.g., silvicultural success) or to another FU (e.g., regeneration success).
Enter the total area regenerated as well.

Area Not Successfully Regenerated:
Enter the area (in hectares) that does not meet regeneration standards.

Total:
Enter the total area (in hectares) assessed this year.

Area Assessed to Date (ha):
Enter the total area (in hectares) that has been assessed, regenerated to the projected forest unit, and the total area regenerated to date from the start of the plan period.
Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: ____________________
PLAN PERIOD: ___________TO__________________
ANNUAL REPORT: ____________TO______________

AR-15:  Summary of Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances by Size Class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size Class (ha)</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plan Start</td>
<td>Projected Plan End</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 - 200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 - 500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 - 1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001 - 5000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5001 - 10000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-15: Summary of Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances by Size Class

This table summarizes frequency distribution of forest disturbances by size class at the start and end of the plan period to indicate progress towards the template distribution. Information for this table comes from FMP-12 and the actual disturbances since the start of the plan period.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Frequency of Forest Disturbances:
Enter the frequency of forest disturbances by size class.

Number/Percent:
Enter the number and percent of forest disturbances in each of plan start, projected plan end and actual to date, by size class. Enter the percent for the template by size class from FMP-12.

Plan Start:
Enter the frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the start of the plan period.

Projected Plan End:
Enter the projected frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the end of the plan period.

Actual To Date:
Enter the actual frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the end of year seven or the plan period, as applicable.

Template:
Enter the template frequency (percent) by size class of forest disturbances as determined during the planning process and recorded in FMP-12.

Enter totals as required.
**AR-16: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Harvest/Salvage (ha)</th>
<th>Regenerated (ha)</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
<th>8888 to 8888</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>Harvest/Salvage (ha)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-16: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends

This table summarizes harvest, including salvage, and regeneration level trends over multiple five-year terms by forest unit. The purpose of this table is to allow comparison of the harvest/salvage area for a five-year term with the results of regeneration efforts on the same area. The regenerated area will be updated with the preparation of successive year seven and year ten annual reports. The sources of the information are the results presented in AR-1 and AR-14 in all annual reports. As many terms of reliable data as available should be included.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest.

Year to Year:
Enter the start year and end year (e.g., 1995 to 2000) of the applicable five-year term as column headings.

Harvest/Salvage (ha):
Enter the total actual harvest and salvage area for the applicable term. This information is summarized from the applicable AR-1s.

Regenerated (ha):
Enter the total area successfully regenerated by forest unit for the applicable term. The applicable term is the term during which the area was harvested, not the term in which it was assessed as regenerated.

Enter totals as required.
**AR-17: Summary of Available Managed Crown Productive Forest**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Past Plans</th>
<th>Current Plan &lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>Projections</th>
<th>Plan End &lt;year&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>Plan Start &lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>Short-Term &lt;year+10&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total

<year>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-17: SUMMARY OF AVAILABLE MANAGED CROWN PRODUCTIVE FOREST

This table summarizes the available managed Crown productive forest area (ha) by forest unit over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Forest Unit
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3. For past plans, use the forest unit in the current FMP-3 that best describes those used in the applicable past plan.

Area (ha)
Enter the area of the available managed Crown productive forest (in hectares) by forest unit for the applicable past and current plans.

Past Plans:
Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

Current Plan:
Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Note: Current plan end and next plan start information is the same point in time (i.e., current plan end information = plan start information for next plan).

Enter all totals as required.
**PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTING**

**MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:** ____________________

**PLAN PERIOD:** _____________ TO _______________

**ANNUAL REPORT:** ____________ TO ______________

**AR-18: Summary of Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Type</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>Plan Start</td>
<td>Short-Term</td>
<td>Medium-Term</td>
<td>Long-Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year+10&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year+20&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year+100&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Type Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E-56 Forest Management Planning Manual  June 2004**
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-18: Summary of Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest

This table summarizes the Crown productive forest area (ha) by forest type and age over time.
The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Forest Type:**
Enter the forest type. Forest type is usually the forest unit identified in FMP-3. For past plans, use the forest unit in FMP-3 that best describes those used in the applicable past plan.

**Age:**
Enter the age (e.g., 20-year age class, seral stage). This column is left blank for forest types managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Area (ha)**
Enter the area of the Crown productive forest (in hectares) by forest type and age for the applicable past and current plans.

**Past Plans:**
Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

**Current Plan:**
Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Note: Current plan end and next plan start information is the same point in time (i.e., current plan end information = plan start information for next plan).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
AR-19: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selected Wildlife Species</th>
<th>Past Plans</th>
<th>Current Plan &lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>Projections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plan Start</td>
<td>Short-Term</td>
<td>Long-Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year+10&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year+100&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-Term</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year+20&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-19: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

This table summarizes the area (in hectares) of habitat for selected wildlife species over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the set of tables as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Selected Wildlife Species:

Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species occurring on the management unit. The selected species should include as a minimum the appropriate provincially and locally featured species. Provincial/regional analysis may reveal other species whose habitat is rare and/or diminishing at the Provincial/regional level. Where the management unit is important in maintaining or improving habitat for these species, they will be included as selected wildlife species.

Area of Habitat (ha)

Enter the area of habitat (in hectares) for the selected wildlife species for the applicable past and current plans.

Past Plans:

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

Current Plan:

Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Note: Current plan end and next plan start information is the same point in time (i.e., current plan end information = plan start information for next plan).
AR-20: Assessment of Objective Achievement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Objective</th>
<th>Indicator/Measure</th>
<th>Plan Start Level</th>
<th>Desirable Level</th>
<th>Target (how much, when)</th>
<th>Plan End</th>
<th>Management Strategy - Projections</th>
<th>Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Management at Target Year (10 years)</td>
<td>Short (10 years)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantitative Objectives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualitative Objectives</td>
<td>Assessment:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-60 Forest Management Planning Manual June 2004
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-20: Assessment of Objective Achievement

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators, targets and achievement, and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective at the end of the plan period. The source of information for this table is FMP-13 and actual achievement or change in the indicator during the plan period.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, the plan period and annual report year.

Management Objective:
Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

Indicator/Measure:
Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets and projections.

Plan Start Level:
Enter the plan start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for the ten-year period (e.g., available harvest volume).

Desirable Level:
Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Target:
Enter the target level for the indicator and the year the target will be achieved. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Plan End:
Enter the actual plan end level (may be to date activity levels from the annual report or plan start levels for next plan).

Management Strategy – Projections
Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the management strategy, for the target year and for the short, medium and long term.

Assessment:
Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the plan start, desirable, target and plan end achievement levels, as well as the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:
Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Existing Roads Table</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Analysis Package Contents</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Social and Economic Description</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in Strategic Analysis</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Roads Supplementary Documentation Form</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking

#### Figure APP-1: List of Management Units (April 1, 2004)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>Management Unit Name</th>
<th>#</th>
<th>Management Unit Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>448</td>
<td>Algoma Forest</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>Nagagami Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>451</td>
<td>Algonquin Park Forest</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>Nighthawk Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444</td>
<td>Armstrong Forest</td>
<td>754</td>
<td>Nipissing Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220</td>
<td>Bancroft-Minden Forest</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>Northshore Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>067</td>
<td>Big Pic Forest</td>
<td>415</td>
<td>Ogoki Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>370</td>
<td>Black River Forest</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>Ottawa Valley Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>Black Sturgeon Forest</td>
<td>851</td>
<td>Pic River Ojibway Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td>Caribou Forest</td>
<td>765</td>
<td>Pineland-Martel Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>375</td>
<td>Cochrane–Moose River</td>
<td>840</td>
<td>Red Lake Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Crossroute Forest</td>
<td>930</td>
<td>Romeo Malette Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>177</td>
<td>Dog River-Matawin Forest</td>
<td>853</td>
<td>Sapawe Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>535</td>
<td>Dryden Forest</td>
<td>868</td>
<td>Shiningtree Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230</td>
<td>English River Forest</td>
<td>040</td>
<td>Smooth Rock Falls Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360</td>
<td>French-Severn Forest</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>Spanish Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>Gordon Cosens Forest</td>
<td>030</td>
<td>Spruce River Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601</td>
<td>Hearst Forest</td>
<td>889</td>
<td>Sudbury Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Iroquois Falls Forest</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>Superior Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>Kenogami Forest</td>
<td>898</td>
<td>Temagami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>644</td>
<td>Kenora Forest</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>Timiskaming Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>702</td>
<td>Lac Seul Forest</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>Trout Lake Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>Lake Nipigon Forest</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>Wabigoon Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>796</td>
<td>Lakehead Forest</td>
<td>949</td>
<td>Wawa Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>565</td>
<td>Magpie Forest</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>Whiskey Jack Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Mazinaw-Lanark Forest</td>
<td>060</td>
<td>White River Forest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* (as designated under the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, Section 7)
Figure APP-2: Map of Management Units (April 1, 2004)

Management Units
Within the
Area of the Undertaking
(as of April 01, 2004)

Legend

- Major Parks
- Algonquin Park Forest MU
- Management Units (MU)
- Management Unit #

Note: The Management Unit # on the map provides the link to the name in Figure APP-1.
## Appendix II: Existing Roads Table

**Management Unit Name:** ________________________  
[ ] Phase I (Year 1-5)  
**Plan Period:** ________ TO ________  
[ ] Phase II (Year 6-10)

### Existing Roads Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Road or Road Network Identifier</th>
<th>Road Length</th>
<th>Use Management</th>
<th>Access Control</th>
<th>Future Use Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monitoring</td>
<td>Transfer Year</td>
<td>Management Intent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Total | | | | |

---

App-4 Forest Management Planning Manual  
June 2004
INSTRUCTIONS

Existing Roads Table

This table lists all existing roads or road networks that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee and includes the road length and use management (i.e. maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning and abandonment) for the period of the plan. The table is prepared as part of the background information and is updated during Phase II planning.

Complete the table as follows:

Road or Road Network Identifier:
   Enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

Road Length:
   For each road or road network, enter the road length in kilometres at the beginning of the plan term.

Use Management:
   For each existing road or road network, complete the following columns.

   Maintenance:
      Provide a brief summary of the maintenance that is likely to occur during the plan term.

   Monitoring:
      Provide a brief summary of monitoring, including monitoring of water crossings that is likely to occur during the plan term.

   Access Control:
      Type: If applicable, enter the type of access control (under the Public Lands Act or any other form of regulation) which currently exists.
      Year: Indicate the operating year (e.g., 2006/2007) in which access control was established.

   Future Use Management:
      Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2011/2012) or five-year term (e.g. 2011/2016) in which responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNR.
      Management Intent: Indicate MNR’s management intent (e.g., transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission/abandonment).

Enter the total length of roads.

Note: Existing roads with new construction forecast or planned will also be included in FMP-22.
Appendix III: Analysis Package Contents

The analysis package will be used to document the information, assumptions, and decisions made during the analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term management direction, and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The analysis package will be included in the supplementary documentation of a forest management plan.

The analysis package will document:

(a) analytical tools used in the development or analysis of the management strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.4.2);
(b) the tasks and responsibilities associated with data compilation, update, and classification, and with conducting analyses;
(c) development of the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4), including:
   (i) data used in the development of the base model and the manner in which the data are classified and updated;
   (ii) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions, disturbance assumptions);
   (iii) strategic silviculture options;
   (iv) development of the natural benchmark (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4);
   (v) management assumptions (e.g., including harvest flow rules, operability);
   (vi) how direction from applicable forest management guides were represented in the analysis;
   (vii) assumptions and conclusions made during the analysis, any sensitivity analysis and the rationale for data inputs;
   (viii) any other results important for the evaluation of the management strategy; and
   (ix) a digital copy of the model run for the base model;
(d) completion of applicable progress checkpoints (Part A, Section 1.1.5);
(e) scoping investigations (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5) including:
   (i) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and assumptions;
   (ii) results and conclusions; and
   (iii) a digital copy of a selected model run that best represents each investigation; and
(f) development of the management strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2) including:
   (i) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;
   (ii) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model results;
   (iii) changes to the base model and rationale for those changes;
   (iv) modeling results;
   (v) the rationale for adjustments to targets, if applicable; and
   (vi) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for the proposed management strategy.
Appendix IV: Social and Economic Description

Part 1: Social and Economic Context for the Management Unit

List each community that receives substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest products from the management unit or, that has substantial employment related to the forest industry, and each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

Part 2: Demographic Profiles

The profile of each community will contain the following data:

- population and labour force;
- community diversity and official language (diversity is an indicator of community resilience);
- household characteristics;
- individual income by gender, household income;
- educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community resilience); and
- labour force dependency ratios.

The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data, and the most recent census data that are available are often several years old or more. The Ministry of Northern Development and Mines Regional Economic Development Branch is also a source for community profile information. Other community data can be found on the Statistics Canada web site (http://www.statcan.ca) under Community Profiles. A planning team representative(s) is required to contact economic development officers in the communities identified in the social and economic context for the management unit, and ask them if they would review the profile, update it where they can, and add further relevant insight. Additional or updated information will be added to the profile in the most reader-friendly format, which may simply be as text.

Part 3: Description of the Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

Information describing the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest provides the baseline information on the social and economic environment affected by management decisions in a forest management plan. The information in the description will be considered in the development of management objectives and the management strategy, and the planning of forest operations.

The planning team will collect and summarize information described in this section, where this information is available. The availability of this information will vary between...
management units. Sources of this information include government, the private sector and
members of the public. Information may also be available from web sites, reports, databases
or other media. The sources of information used will be referenced in the description. If
businesses are not willing to disclose information, the planning team will document, in the
description, the efforts made to obtain the information.

The description should be organized by sector.

**Timber**

1. List the holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences and describe
   wood supply commitments in force.

2. For each year over the past five years, show the volume of wood from the forest, by
   conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by each receiving mill.

3. Describe the destinations of chips produced by local sawmills that use wood from the
   forest.

4. For the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the management unit,
   describe:
   - the types of products made;
   - employment (includes woodlands and woodlands contractors);
   - ownership of the mill over the past five years;
   - recent major upgrades; and
   - any events such as strikes, fires, etc that caused significant downtime.

5. Provide, on an annual basis for each of the last five years, the actual harvest volume,
   the value of stumpage (sub-divided by timber dues, payments to the forest renewal
   trust, and payments to the forestry futures trusts, and the average stumpage paid per
   cubic metre.

**Recreation and Tourism**

1. Describe the parks, protected areas, within and adjacent to the management unit.

2. For each lodge within or adjacent to the forest management unit, list the name of the
   business, capacity, type of lodge (e.g., hunting/fishing, snowmobile, etc.), and number
   of outpost camps. Where possible, also provide, the occupancy levels, the location of
   origin of the clients, seasonality of operations, and other such relevant information.
   Discuss trends of interest. Also describe how the lodge can be accessed.

3. Where available, discuss the revenue generated from tourist lodges and employment
   (direct, indirect and induced).
4. Describe the amount of direct local employment in the sector, and provide a breakdown of the seasonality of this employment. Determine indirect and induced employment.

5. Describe the recreational facilities available on the management unit such as campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all terrain vehicles, hiking, mountain biking, cross country skiing.

6. Describe Crown land recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, Crown land camping, use of trails, snowmobiling, etc) on the unit.

7. Describe any enhancements to quality or capacity of tourism lodges made during the past five years.

8. Describe any relevant tourism expenditure data, willingness to pay information, etc.

9. Describe any relevant commercial tourism activities on the unit that are not associated with lodges (e.g., ecotourism or adventure tourism), provide the number of clients such businesses bring to the forest, and their impact on the local and provincial economies.

10. Provide hunting and fishing data relevant to the management unit (e.g., the number of resident and non-resident licences issued).

11. Provide available data on use of Crown land within the forest management unit for recreation.

**Mining, Aggregate and Hydro Generation**

1. Describe any mining, aggregate and hydro facilities on or adjacent to the forest management unit. Where mining operations are found, describe the amount of mineral produced, reserve capacity, and expected mine life. Where available, discuss the revenue generated from the mine and employment (direct, indirect and induced). Discuss the economic contribution of mineral exploration activity on the unit.

2. Where aggregates are produced, describe the number of pits and the amount produced, as well as revenue and employment information where available.

3. Where hydro facilities are present, describe the employment and the economic impact of the operation on the local area.

**Other**

1. Discuss the number of traplines on the forest management unit, the number of trappers and estimate the trapping revenue.

2. Describe the number of baitfish operations and their economic impact.
3. Indicate how many people are employed by the MNR District office(s) associated with the management unit.
## Appendix V: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps

### Natural Resource Features such as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fisheries</th>
<th>Wildlife</th>
<th>Forests</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- major fish communities by lake/stream</td>
<td>- moose concentration areas (early &amp; late winter)</td>
<td>- tree improvement areas *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- bait fish lakes</td>
<td>- moose aquatic feeding areas</td>
<td>- seed orchards *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- spawning areas</td>
<td>- mineral licks</td>
<td>- seed collection areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- nursery areas</td>
<td>- calving sites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- deer wintering areas (yards)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- raptor nests (e.g., eagles, ospreys, red-shouldered hawks, Cooper’s hawks)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- genetic test areas *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- research plots (e.g., growth and yield plots) *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Forest Resources Uses/Values such as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tourism Establishments</th>
<th>Cottaging/Residential Sites or Areas</th>
<th>Mineral/Aggregate/Quarry Developments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- main base lodges</td>
<td>- existing development</td>
<td>- pit or quarry permits or licences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- outpost camps</td>
<td>- remote cottage sites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- active mining claims</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Commercial Fur

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crown Land Recreation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- registered trapline areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- access points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- canoe routes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- portage trails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- hiking/nature trails</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Bear Management Areas

### Wild Rice Production Areas

### Enhanced Management Areas

### Existing and Planned Infrastructure Features such as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Existing and Planned Infrastructure Features such as:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- roads and railways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- utilities (pipelines, hydro lines)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- waste and sewage disposal sites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- airports/airstrips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- communications towers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Cultural Heritage Sites and Features*, such as:

- archaeological sites and resources
- cemeteries/burial grounds, including Aboriginal peoples’ cemeteries
- areas of archaeological potential
- built heritage resources
- traditional use sites
- cultural heritage landscapes

### Other Special Land Uses of Local Significance as identified by any person, such as:

- areas of significance to local communities such as areas used for traditional or recreational activities
- Reserves and other Aboriginal communities
- Areas which have been identified as being required as reserve lands or for economic or capital development projects
- Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest
- Evaluated wetlands and evaluated wetland complexes
- registered trapline areas
- areas used for fuelwood or building materials
- sites of local archaeological, historical, religious and cultural heritage significance, including Aboriginal graveyards, spirit sites and burial sites*
- medicinal plants
- Significant ecological area (e.g., significant woodland, significant flora)
- old growth red and white pine forest communities

### Exclusions from the Land Base of the Management Unit, including:

- Federal lands (e.g., Indian Reserves, Department of National Defence Bases, National Parks)
- Provincial parks, conservation reserves and approved provincial park candidates (provincial parks, conservation reserves and forest reserves recommended in the relevant land use plan or subject to interim protection)
- Crown land leases (e.g., land use permits, licenses of occupation)
- patented lands
- cemeteries/burial grounds, including Aboriginal cemeteries and burial grounds *
- Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest which have been designated as exclusions from the management unit

*Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information would not normally be shown on the values maps.*
Appendix VI: Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in Strategic Analysis

As a package, the analysis tools used in strategic analysis will incorporate all of the following information requirements:

(a) Land Base Definition:
   (i) forest unit descriptions;
   (ii) descriptions of wildlife habitat types, and potential suitability of various habitat types to provide habitat for selected wildlife species;
   (iii) listing of areas available and unavailable for timber production, by forest class; and
   (iv) non-forested land type descriptions.

(b) Forest Dynamics Information:
   (i) rates of natural disturbance and succession of one forest class to another;
   (ii) rates of natural succession of non-forested land types to forest; and
   (iii) forest growth and yield information (in the form of growth projections and yield curves) for natural forest development, and for different strategic silvicultural options, including net down factors used for waste and breakage, cull, logging damage, and age of decadence.

(c) Silvicultural Options:
   (i) harvest operability ranges;
   (ii) where applicable, shelterwood harvest options;
   (iii) where applicable, uneven-aged harvest options;
   (iv) stumpage values;
   (v) allowances for reserve prescriptions in forest management planning;
   (vi) allowances for volumes by species left unharvested;
   (vii) conversion rates of harvested areas to non-forested land (e.g., roads and landings);
   (viii) forest renewal options, including costs and seedling requirements;
   (ix) post-renewal forest succession rates and regeneration delay;
   (x) tree improvement options, including expected results;
   (xi) commercial thinning and tending treatment options, including costs and expected results; and
   (xii) active non-forest rehabilitation treatment options, including costs and expected results.

(d) Management Objectives:
   (i) desired forest condition targets (forest unit area, age class structure, growing stock);
   (ii) harvest volume, products, and flow targets; and
   (iii) silvicultural activity targets.

This information must meet any applicable requirements specified in the Forest Information Manual.
Appendix VII:   Roads Supplementary Documentation Form

This appendix is organized into four parts:

A: Primary Road Corridors  
B: Branch Road Corridors  
C: Operational Roads  
D: Existing Roads or Road Networks

Complete Part A for each new primary road that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.7, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.6.

Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads, that is required for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.2 and 1.3.6.6.

Complete Part C for each new area of operations, or a group of new areas of operations, for each five-year term, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.4 and 1.3.6.6.

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks, that is the responsibility of the forest resource licensee, if a use management strategy does not exist, or an existing use management strategy is being changed, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.6.
A: PRIMARY ROAD CORRIDORS

Complete Part A for each new primary road.

ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER: ________________________

1. Alternative Corridors

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.7):

2. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Corridors

Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

(a) Alternative corridor number:
(b) Description (attach map):
(c) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.7):
   (i) advantages and disadvantages:
   (ii) use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):
   (iii) estimated costs of construction and use management:

3. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

4. Proposed Corridor

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

(a) Description (attach map):
(b) Use management strategy:
(c) Rationale:

5. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

6. Selected Corridor

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.
If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.
B: Branch Road Corridors

Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads with both a common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER: ____________________

Provide a list of branch roads, with road name identifiers, with both a common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

1. Proposed Corridor

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

(a) Description (attach map(s) identifying the road corridor(s)):

(b) Rationale (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2, items (a) – (c)):

(c) Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

3. Selected Corridor

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.
C: Operational Roads

Complete Part C for each new area of operations, or group of new areas of operations with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy.

AREA OF OPERATIONS NAME/IDENTIFIER: ______________________

Provide a list of areas of operations with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy.

1. Proposed Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

3. Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.
D: EXISTING ROADS OR ROAD NETWORKS

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy.

ROAD or ROAD NETWORK NAME/IDENTIFIER: ________________________

Provide a list of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy.

1. Proposed Use Management Strategy

   Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

   Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):

2. Summary of Public Comments

   Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

3. Use Management Strategy

   If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

   If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.
Appendix VIII: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form

This appendix is organized into five parts:

A: Area of Concern Description
B: Operational Prescription
C: Conditions on Operational Roads
D: Primary and Branch Road Crossings
E: Monitoring Program

Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC) or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values for which an operational prescription is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

Complete Part A, Part C, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC) or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values which will be crossed by an operational road(s), in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.4.

Complete Part A, Part D, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC) which is crossed by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.
A: Area of Concern Description

Complete Part A for each individual area of concern (AOC), or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values, prior to Phase I: Stage Two (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

1. Area of Concern (AOC) Identifier: _____________________

The area of concern (AOC) identifier may be numeric, alphabetic or any combination, and will uniquely identify either an individual AOC or a group of AOCs with a common natural resource feature, land use or value.

In order to link the supplementary documentation form, FMP-14 and the detailed operations maps for the five-year term, the AOC identifier will be entered in the first column of FMP-14, and will also appear on the operations maps.

2. Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value

   (a) Description of natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s) (listed in order of importance):

   (b) Dimensions of area of concern:
B: Operational Prescription

Complete Part B for each individual area of concern (AOC), or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values, for which an operational prescription is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

1. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Operational Prescriptions

Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

   (a) Alternative identifier/number:
   (b) Description of proposed operational prescription:
       (Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to regular harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)
   (c) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b)):

2. Proposed operational prescription

Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

   (a) Description:
   (b) Rationale:
       (c) Exception:
       (Specify if the operational prescription is an exception, and identify applicable forest management guide, section and page reference.)

3. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

4. Selected prescription

If the proposed operational prescription is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected operational prescription is different from the proposed operational prescription, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected operational prescription.
C: Conditions on Operational Roads

Complete Part C for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common natural resource feature, land uses or values, which will be crossed by an operational road(s), in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.4.

1. Proposed Conditions

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

Conditions on:
(a) the location(s) of a crossing(s); and
(b) the construction of a crossing(s).

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

3. Conditions

If the proposed conditions are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the conditions are different from the proposed conditions, complete the requirements of section 1 for the conditions.
D: Primary or Branch Road Crossing

Complete Part D for each individual AOC which is crossed by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER: ____________________

1. Proposed Crossing Location

   Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

   (a) Description of 100 metre wide location for the road (attach map):
   (b) Conditions on construction, including preventive and mitigative measures:
   (c) Description of acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location (attach map), and acceptable variations to the conditions on construction:
   (d) Rationale (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3, items (a) – (c)):

2. Summary of Public Comments

   Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of (and Phase II: Stage One) consultation.

3. Selected Crossing Location

   If the proposed location is selected, no further documentation is required.

   If the selected location is different from the proposed location, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected location.
E: Monitoring Program

Complete Part E if the operational prescription for the individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common natural resource feature, land uses or values, which was prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a forest operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part E if the regular forest operations inspection program applies.)

1. Proposed Monitoring Program

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

(a) Description:
(b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription:

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

3. Monitoring Program

If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program, complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

Aird

ARM

CBS95

CFIT
A Guide to Canadian Forest Inventory Terminology and Usage (1978)

CFSA

EAA
*The Environmental Assessment Act* (1975)

EA Decision
Environmental Assessment Board's *Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)* (1994)

EA Dec Order

EALS
An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry of Natural Resources (September, 1995)

FIM
OMNR. Forest Information Manual (April 2001)

FITC
Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee, Forestry Canada (1988)

FMM

FMPM (1996)

Forman

FOSM
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>FRI</td>
<td>Forest Inventory Procedure for Ontario (1978)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>TCEA</td>
<td>MNR’s Timber Class Environmental Assessment Review (July 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>URN</td>
<td>Items from Terminology of Forest Science: Technology Practice and Products are listed by Universal Reference Number (1971)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE: Underlined words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.

ABANDONMENT (roads)
A component of a use management strategy for a road (and associated water crossings) that has fulfilled its intended use for forest management purposes, and is no longer required for other resource management purposes.
also see Decommissioning

ABORIGINAL
Aboriginal persons, according to Section 35 of Constitution Act, 1982, include Indian, Inuit and Metis People of Canada.

ACCESS CONTROL (roads)
The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

AGE CLASS
One of the intervals into which the age range of forest stands is divided for classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

ANALYSIS TOOL (FOREST)
A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of the long-term management direction in a forest management plan.

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
A document mainly in the form of tables and maps, which identifies the type and extent of forest operations to be carried out during one year, consistent with the forest management plan. (Adapted URN 4417)

AREA CHARGES
The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a Forest Resource Licence, as required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, the Regulations, and the licence.

AREA OF CONCERN (AOC)
A geographic area within an area of operations which is adjacent to an identified natural resource feature, land use or value that may be affected by forest management activities.

AREA OF OPERATIONS
A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of forest stands selected for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of a forest management plan. The area of operations may include areas of retention (no operations).
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

AREA OF THE UNDERTAKING
An area consisting of approximately 385,000 square kilometres (or 38.5 million hectares) of Crown land, on which forest management activities are conducted in Ontario. Forest management plans are prepared for management units within this area. (Modified EA Dec Order)

The Area of the Undertaking is depicted in Appendix I of this manual.

ARTIFICIAL REGENERATION
Renewal of a forest, by seeding or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)

BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY (syn: Biodiversity)
The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which they a part. (OG)

Biodiversity: includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (CBS95)

CLEANING
An operation in a young forest stand, not past the sapling stage, to free the favoured trees from undesirable individuals of similar age or size which overtop them or are likely to do so. Cleaning may be accomplished by hand or by mechanical or chemical means. (Modified MFM)

CLEARCUT
Noun.
1. An area harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system.
2. An area of forest land from which all (or most) merchantable trees have recently been harvested.

Verb. To harvest the merchantable trees in an area, normally in one operation. (Modified STC)

CLEARCUT SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
A method of harvesting and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of all (or most) of the merchantable trees. Regeneration can originate naturally or artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches. (Modified STC)

CONIFER
Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones and needle-shaped leaves.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

1. **CONSERVATION**
   Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation, maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of the environment. Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is to be conserved is not so much the physical state of an ecological system as the ecological processes by which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)

2. **CONTINGENCY AREA**
   Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which cause selected harvest areas to be no longer available for operations. Contingency area will serve as replacement for selected harvest areas, and will only be used if needed.

3. **CONTINGENCY PLAN**
   An interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. An approved contingency plan permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the renewed forest management plan.

4. **CORRIDOR**
   An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a stream or route. (FITC)

5. **CRITERIA**
   **Harvest:** A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas that are eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the selection of areas for the five-year term.
   **Sustainability:** See Criterion

6. **CRITERION**
   1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are monitored periodically to assess change. (SFR 2001)
   2. A category of conditions or processes by which sustainable forest management may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are measured or assessed periodically to assess change.
   3. A distinguishable characteristic of sustainable forest management; a value that must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR 2001)

7. **CROWN FOREST**
   A forest ecosystem or part of a forest ecosystem that is on land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario and under the management of the Minister of Natural Resources. (CFSA)
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

CROWN FOREST SUSTAINABILITY ACT
An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the sustainability of Crown forests and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social, economic and environmental needs of present and future generations. (Modified CFSA)

CROWN LAND
Land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario.

CUTTING CYCLE
The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)

DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM
Information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision modules), databases and a decision maker’s own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a specific decision.

DECOMMISSIONING (roads)
For roads or road networks identified for abandonment, the physical work that will be undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public safety and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water crossing(s)). The roadway will degenerate over time.

also see Abandonment

DESIRABLE LEVEL
The measurable amount for an indicator, expressed as a specific number, a range or a trend, used in the assessment of sustainability.

DISEASE
Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)

ECOSITE
An ecological landscape unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils, topography and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successively-related vegetation conditions.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

ECOSYSTEM
The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions, within a particular habitat. (STC)

ENDANGERED SPECIES
A native species, that is at risk of extirpation or extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its Ontario range.

ENVIRONMENT
In Ontario, the environment is described as:
1. air, land, or water;
2. plant and animal life, including man;
3. the social, economic, and cultural conditions that influence the life of man or a community;
4. any building, structure, machine, or other device or thing made by man
5. any solid or liquid, gas, odour, heat, sound, vibration or radiation resulting directly or indirectly from the activities of man; or
6. any part or combination of the foregoing and the interrelationships between any two or more of them (EAA).

EXCEPTION
A silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules which differs from the recommendations in the applicable silvicultural guide, or an operational prescription for an area of concern which differs from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide.

FISH HABITAT
Spawning grounds and nursery, rearing, food supply and migration areas on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes. (section 34(1) of the Fisheries Act)

FOREST
1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation, growing more or less closely together (URN 2441);
2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of timber and other forest products, or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).
3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of forest stands.

FOREST COVER
All of the trees as described by the Forest Resources Inventory.

FOREST DISTURBANCE
A natural (e.g. fire) or anthropogenic (e.g. timber harvest) event in the forest that alters the natural succession of a forest stand or stands.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

1. FOREST DYNAMICS
   The natural processes involved in the development of a forest, and associated with growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.

2. FOREST ECOSYSTEM
   An ecosystem in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological component. (CFSA)

3. FOREST HEALTH
   The condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)

4. FOREST MANAGEMENT
   Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the administration and working of a forest for specified management objectives; more particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative, economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical aspects, especially silviculture, protection and forest regulation. (Aird)

5. FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
   A document, prepared for a management unit in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual and section 8 of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994. A forest management plan contains pertinent information and prescriptions by means of which forest policy, aims and objectives are translated into a continuous sequence of specific treatments on a management unit for a specified period of years.

   Current Plan: An approved forest management plan that is being implemented.

   Past Plan or Previous Plan: The expired forest management plan for the plan period immediately preceding the current plan.

6. FOREST OPERATIONS
   The harvesting of a forest resource, the use of a forest resource for a designated purpose, or the renewal or maintenance of a forest resource, and includes all related activities. (CFSA)

7. FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTION
   A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition.

8. FOREST RENEWAL TRUST FUND
   The trust which provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after March 31, 1994 in respect of Crown forests in which forest resources have been harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

1. **FOREST RESOURCE**
   Trees in a forest ecosystem, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the regulations that is in a forest ecosystem. (CFSA, section 3)

2. **FOREST RESOURCES INVENTORY**
   A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about the timber resource on each management unit (e.g., stand age, stand height, species composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a management unit divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-productive forest and productive forest, and further classifies each component by ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)

3. **FOREST STAND(S)**
   An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition (species), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of trees. (Modified MNR 1998)

4. **FOREST TYPE**
   A general term to describe a group of forested areas or forest stands of similar composition. (Modified STC)

5. **FOREST UNIT**
   A classification system that aggregates forest stands for management purposes that will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both naturally and in response to silvicultural treatments), and will be managed under the same silvicultural system.

6. **FORESTRY FUTURES TRUST FUND**
   The trust which provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister:
   1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in Crown forests where forest resources have been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
   2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource licence, if the licensee becomes insolvent.
   3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of forest resources in Crown forests.
   4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.
   (CFSA)
FREE-TO-GROW (Syn.: free growing)

Stands that meet stocking, height and/or height growth rate, as specified in the
silvicultural ground rules, and are judged to be essentially free from competing
vegetation. (Adapted FMM)

GUIDE (forest management)

A Ministry of Natural Resources forest management guide described in the Forest
Operations and Silviculture Manual and any forest management guide that is adopted
by reference in the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual. Forest management
guides provide direction for forest management practitioners that must be used in the
development and implementation of forest management plans. (Modified EA Dec.
Order)

GUIDELINE

Direction from a guide that is a mandatory requirement but has flexibility for
interpretation and adaptation to meet the specific needs of the local management unit.
(Adapted MNR 2001)

HABITAT

An area with the combination of resources (food, cover, water) and environmental
conditions (temperature, precipitation and the presence or absence of predators and
competitors) that promotes occupancy by individuals of a given species (or
population) and allows those individuals to survive and reproduce. (Morrison)

HARDWOOD

Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle-bearing conifers. Also, the
wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

HARVEST AREA

Available: The area (in hectares) for each forest unit, as determined in the
development of the long-term management direction, which serves as a limit for
harvest area by forest unit, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan

Contingency: see Contingency Area

Eligible: The areas, as determined by criteria consistent with the long-term management
direction that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period.

Forecast: The sum of the selected harvest areas (in hectares) for the ten-year period.

Optional: The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are not preferred or selected
harvest areas.

Planned: The portion of the forecast harvest area (in hectares) required to meet
projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments that is expected
to be harvested in each five year term.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Preferred: The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are favoured for harvest during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

Projected: The predicted area (in hectares) which could be harvested over time (e.g. 100 years) for each forest unit and age class and/or stage of management, as determined through analyses conducted during the development of the long-term management direction.

Selected: The areas from the preferred and optional harvest areas which are chosen for harvest for the ten-year period.

Surplus: The areas from the selected harvest areas that are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the ten-year period.

HARVESTING
The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)

HARVEST METHOD
A modification of one of the basic silvicultural systems which describes the harvest technique (e.g., strip, clearcut, group shelterwood). (Modified FMPM 1996)

HERBICIDE
Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody plants, and their seeds. (STC)

INDEPENDENT FOREST AUDIT
An independently led review of the adequacy of forest management practices, controls and processes to ensure that the management organization continues to be in control and in compliance with relevant legislation, policies and directives.

INDIVIDUAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT
An environmental assessment that is subject to the requirements set out in Part II of the Environmental Assessment Act (RSO 1990, chapter E.18, as amended).

INDICATOR
A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in each forest management plan to assess the effectiveness of forest management activities in achieving management objectives, and to assess the sustainability of the forest.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

INSECTICIDE
Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of insects. (STC)

LANDSCAPE
A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)
A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.

LICENSEE
A person or company to whom a Forest Resource Licence has been granted. (SM)

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE
A standing advisory committee of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests, appointed by the Ministry of Natural Resources to participate in the forest management planning process. (EA Decision)
An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.

LOGGING METHOD
A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to roadside during a harvesting operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).

LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION
The management objectives, indicators, assessment of sustainability, social and economic assessment, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest and benefits and provide for the sustainability of the forest for the management unit.

MAINTENANCE (forestry)
The forest management activities of tending and protection, which are carried out to ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.

MAINTENANCE (roads)
Routine: Those day to day activities necessary to maintain a road for the traffic using it.
Emergency: Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to road users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts, damaged bridges, etc.). (ARM)
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

MANAGED FOREST
Crown forest for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents the land from being managed for forest management purposes.

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE
A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions, developed specifically for the management unit, that are to be achieved through the manipulation of forest cover.

MANAGEMENT UNIT

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER
A descriptor for a tree or forest stand that has attained sufficient size, quality, and/or volume to be suitable for harvest.

- A conifer, poplar or white birch log of which more than one-half of the total content is sound wood when the content is measured in cubic metres; or
- A hardwood log other than poplar or white birch of which more than one-third of the total content is sound wood when the content is measured in cubic metres. (SM)

MODIFIED OPERATIONS
Harvest, renewal and tending operations, where prescriptions have been developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values.

MONITORING
The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)

NATURAL REGENERATION
Renewal of a forest, by natural seeding, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)

NATURAL RESOURCE
A renewable (forest, water, wildlife, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.) resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)

OLD GROWTH
A functional condition of a forest ecosystem, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of physical features and characteristics that typically include:
1. a complex forest stand structure (e.g. old trees for the ecosite, large tree size and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in species composition);
2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material, up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality; and
3. ecosystem functions (e.g. stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and wildlife habitat) that are different from earlier stages of forest development.

OWNERSHIP (land)
Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and other vested interest.

PATENT LAND
Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual, company or corporation in perpetuity.

PESTICIDE
Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used as a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating, attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism, substance or thing registered under the Pest Control Products Act (Canada). (PA)

PLAN AMENDMENT
Any change to a forest management plan or a contingency plan which is consistent with the long term management direction for the management unit. Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement.

PLAN AUTHOR
The registered professional forester licensed to practice professional forestry, under The Ontario Professional Foresters Association Act, 2000 who is responsible for the preparation and certification of a forest management plan. Where the original plan author of the forest management plan no longer has that responsibility, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

PLANNED CLEARCUT
Clearcuts that will be created during a plan consistent with the spatial and temporal standards of MNR’s approved forest management guide, as revised from time to time, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

PLANNING PROPOSAL
A proposal prepared to initiate the process for the preparation of a contingency plan.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

PLAN PERIOD
The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which long-term management direction is established, and forest sustainability is determined.

PLAN RENEWAL
The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a forest management plan. Forest management plans are normally renewed every ten years.

PRESCRIBED BURN
The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)

PRODUCTION FOREST
Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical limitations on the ability to practice forest management. (Modified EA Decision)

PRODUCTIVE FOREST
All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of planning decisions, and which is further sub-divided into “protection forest” and “production forest”. (Modified EA Decision)

PRODUCTIVITY
A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (yield, increment). (Kimmins)

PROVINCIAL FOREST TYPE
An aggregation of forest types used to describe forest cover at broad planning levels. Provincial forest types are defined in the Forest Resource Assessment Policy.

PROTECTION
Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage the spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and diseases. Protection may involve the use of insecticides or manual treatments.

PROTECTION FOREST
Productive forest land on which forest management activities cannot normally be practised without incurring deleterious environmental effects because of obvious physical limitations such as steep slopes and shallow soils over bedrock. (Modified EA Decision)

REGENERATION
The renewal of a forest, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to describe the young forest itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)

Also see Artificial and Natural Regeneration
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

REGION or REGIONAL
In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural Resources.

REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL FORESTER (R.P.F.)
A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under The Ontario Professional Foresters Association Act, 2000

REGULAR OPERATIONS
Harvest, renewal and tending operations conducted in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules.

RENEWAL
The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment and growth of desired future forest stands, which may include the activities of site preparation and regeneration.

RESERVE
An operational prescription for an area of concern where operations are prohibited.

RESOURCE STEWARDSHIP AGREEMENT
An agreement negotiated between a licensed resource-based tourism operation as determined by the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation, and a sustainable forest licensee.

RESPONSIBILITY ASSIGNMENT (roads)
The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e., MNR, sustainable forest licensee, other user).

RE-TREATMENT
A specific renewal treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment is necessary.

ROAD
Primary: A road that provides principal access for the management unit, and is constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

Branch: A road that branches off an existing or new primary or branch road, providing access to, through or between areas of operations on a management unit.

Operational: A road within an area of operations that provides short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and regenerated.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Illustration of Branch and Operational Roads:

ROAD NETWORK
A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area.
(Adapted FRWCI)

SALVAGE HARVEST
The harvesting of timber that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as fire, wind, flood, insects and disease. (Modified FOSM)

SCARIFICATION
Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in preparation for regeneration by natural seeding. (Adapted URN 5134)
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

SEED CUT
Removal of trees in a mature stand to create openings in the canopy which provide conditions for regeneration from the seed of retained trees. The seed cut is normally the first or second cut under the shelterwood silvicultural system.

SEEDING
A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less evenly, over an area.

SEED ORCHARD
A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically improved seed for use in an artificial regeneration program.

SELECTION SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
An uneven-aged silvicultural system which involves periodic partial harvests, controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual tree selection. (MNR 1998)

SHELTERWOOD SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
An even-aged silvicultural system where mature trees are harvested in a series of two or more cuts (preparatory, seed, removal, final) for the purpose of obtaining natural regeneration under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. Regeneration is natural or artificial. Regeneration interval determines the degree of even-aged uniformity. (Adapted MFM)

Group Shelterwood System: Patches of advanced regeneration arising from thinnings or from natural disturbances, commonly developed in even-aged stands. Where this condition is prominent, shelterwood cuttings can be made specifically in relation to the requirements of each group of advanced regeneration. These clumps of regeneration are enlarged by the removal of all or most of the trees above them and starting preparatory or seeding cuttings around them. The holes created in the canopy are gradually enlarged to keep pace with the establishment of reproduction.

Irregular Shelterwood System: Harvest cutting in which opening of the canopy is irregular and gradual; generally in groups, with the final cutting often in strips; regeneration natural; regeneration interval long, often up to half the rotation, and the resultant crop considerably uneven-aged and irregular.

Strip Shelterwood System: A shelterwood system in which regeneration cuttings are carried out on fairly wide strips, generally against the prevailing wind, and progress rapidly; regeneration is mainly natural, regeneration interval short, and resultant crop fairly even-aged and regular.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Uniform Shelterwood System: A shelterwood system in which the canopy is opened fairly evenly throughout the regeneration area; regeneration is mainly natural, though it may be supplemented artificially; regeneration interval fairly short and resultant crop more or less even-aged and regular. (STC)

SILVICULTURAL GROUND RULES
Specifications, standards, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on a management unit during the period of the forest management plan.

SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
A process that applies silvicultural practices, including tending (thinning, pruning, etc.), harvesting, and renewal, to a stand in order to produce a crop of timber and other forest products. Systems are classified according to the method of harvesting of mature forest stands with a view to regeneration establishment, (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, selection). (Modified MNR 1996)

SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT
The method of harvest, renewal or tending, as identified in the silvicultural ground rules, through which a forest operations prescription will be met.

SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT PACKAGE
A grouping of acceptable silvicultural treatments for the appropriate forest unit and ecosite combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired future forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

SILVICULTURE
Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

SITE PREPARATION
Disturbance of the forest floor and the topsoil, by mechanical or chemical means, or by prescribed burning, to create suitable conditions for natural or artificial regeneration. (Modified MFM)

SPATIAL
Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location. Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by geographic information systems.

SPECIAL CONCERN SPECIES (formerly vulnerable)
A native species with characteristics that make it particularly sensitive to human activities or natural events.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

SPECIES
A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other species. (Aird)

SPECIES AT RISK
Any plant or animal, threatened by, or vulnerable to extinction.

STAGE OF MANAGEMENT
One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a forest stand. The type and number of harvest cuts depends on the silvicultural system used.

STANDARD
1. Measurable parameters established for use as a rule or basis for comparison in measuring or judging quantity, quality, value, capacity, or other characteristics.
2. Direction in a guide that is a mandatory requirement, with little or no room for interpretation. (Adapted MNR 2001)

STAND IMPROVEMENT
The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a forest stand, generally used in the selection silvicultural system.

STRATEGIC SILVICULTURAL OPTIONS
Broad groupings of silvicultural treatments that apply to the same initial forest conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or yield curves. Strategic silvicultural options are used to represent silvicultural treatments during strategic analysis.

SUCCESSION
Changes in species composition in an ecosystem over time, often in a predictable order. (Aird)

SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT
Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied to assist natural regeneration to attain the regeneration standards.

SUPPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTATION
The part of the forest management plan that contains the information that supports the decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and maps.

SUSTAINABILITY
Long term Crown forest health. (CFSA)
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

1 SUSTAINABLE FOREST LICENCE

2 SUSTAINABLE FOREST MANAGEMENT
   The management of forest ecosystems to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem which provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. Indicators of forest sustainability criteria are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. Forest operations are conducted in a manner that conserves forest health and minimizes undesirable effects on the physical and social environments.

3 TENDING
   Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of a forest. Tending may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing vegetation through the use of herbicides or manual treatments), thinning, stand improvement or pruning.

4 TERM
   A five-year timeframe for operations in a forest management plan.

5 THINNING
   A cutting made in an immature crop or forest stand primarily to accelerate diameter increment but also, by suitable selection, to improve the average form of the trees that remain. The removal of trees may be from the dominant and codominant crown classes to favour the best trees of those same crown classes (known as crown thinning), or the removal of trees may be to control stand spacing and favour desired trees using a combination of thinning criteria without regard to crown position (know as free thinning).

6 Commercial Thinning: A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the site and used for commercial purposes.

7 Pre-Commercial Thinning: A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value, and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only. Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as "improvement cutting" or stand improvement.

8 THREATENED SPECIES
   A native species that is likely to become endangered through all or a portion of its Ontario range if the limiting factors are not reversed.

9 TIMBER
   A wood material yielded by trees.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

**TREE IMPROVEMENT**
The control of parentage, combined with specific silvicultural treatments (e.g., tending) to improve the overall yield and quality of timber from forest stands.

**USE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY (road)**
A statement outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and responsibilities related to use, maintenance, use control, abandonment and monitoring of roads on Crown land. (ARM)

**VALUE (values maps)**
A term used to describe known natural resource features, land uses or values which may be affected by forest management activities.

**VOLUME**
The amount of wood in a tree, forest stand, or other specified area, recorded by a unit of measure.

**WETLAND**
Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (Wetlands Policy)

**WILDLIFE**
Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.

**YIELD**
The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a forest stand, or other specified area.